# Linear Algebra Notes

Lance Remigio

May 31, 2024

# Contents

# List of Theorems

# Chapter 1

# Vector Spaces

## 1.1 Vector Spaces

### 1.1.1 Basics

**Definition 1.1.1** (Vector Spaces). A **vector space** (or **linear space**) over a field $F$ consists of a set on which two operations (called **addition** and **scalar multiplication**, respectively) are defined so that for each pair of elements $x, y$, in $V$ there is a unique element $ax$ in $V$, such that the following conditions hold:

(VS 1) For all $x, y \in V$, $x + y = y + x$ (commutativity of addition).

(VS 2) For all $x, y, z \in V$ , $(x + y) + z = x + (y + z)$ (associativity of addition).

(VS 3) There exists an element in $V$ denoted by $O$ such that $x + O = x$ for each $x \in V$

(VS 4) For each element $x \in V$, there exists an element $y \in V$ such that $x + y = O$.

(VS 5) For each element $x \in V$, we have $1x = x$.

(VS 6) For each $a, b \in F$ and each element $x \in V$, then $(ab)x = a(bx)$.

(VS 7) For each element $a \in F$ and each pair $x, y \in V$, we have $a(x + y) = ax + ay$.

(VS 8) For each pair $a, b \in F$ and each $x \in V$, we have $(a + b)x = ax + bx$.

The elements $x + y$ and $ax$ are called the **sum** of $x$ and $y$ and the **product** of $a$ and $x$, respectively.

- The elements of a field $F$ are called **scalars** and the elements of a vector space $V$ are called **vectors** (these should not be confused!).

- Every vector space will always be defined over a given field, mostly defined over the real numbers $\mathbb{R}$ or the complex numbers $\mathbb{C}$ unless otherwise noted.

- Every vector space should specify the operations of addition and scalar multiplication.

**Definition 1.1.2** (n-tuples). An object of the form $(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)$, where the entries $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ are elements of a field $F$, is called an **n-tuple** with entries from $F$. The elements $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ are called **entries** or **components** of the $n$-tuple.

**Definition 1.1.3.** We say that two $n$-tuples, $(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)$ and $(b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n)$, are **equal** if $a_i = b_i$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$.

**Example 1.1.1.** The set of all $n$-tuples with entries from a field $F$ denoted by $F_n$ is a vector space. To see why, suppose $u, v \in F_n$ where $u = (a_1, a_2, \ldots a_n)$ and $v = (b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n)$. If we take term-by-term addition of the entries in both $u$ and $v$, then we end up with

$$u + v = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, \ldots, a_n + b_n)$$

and likewise,

$$cu = (ca_1, ca_2, \ldots, ca_n).$$

These same set of operations define $\mathbb{R}^3$ as a vector space over $\mathbb{R}$ and likewise, $\mathbb{C}^2$ is a vector space over $\mathbb{C}$.

- Note that vectors in $F^n$ can be written as **column vectors**

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}$$

rather than **row vectors** $(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)$.

- 1-tuples are are just scalars or an just an element from $F$.

**Definition 1.1.4.** An $m \times n$ **matrix** with entries from a field $F$ is a rectangular array of the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

where each entry $a_{ij}$ with $(1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n)$ is an element of $F$. We call the entries $a_{ij}$ with $i = j$ the **diagonal entries** of the matrix. The entries $a_{i1}, a_{i2}, \ldots a_{in}$ compose the $i$**th row** of the matrix, and the entries $a_{1j}, a_{2j}, \ldots a_{mj}$ compose the $j$th column of the matrix.

- The rows make a vector space which we denote $F^n$.

- Likewise, the columns make a vector space we denote $F^m$

**Definition 1.1.5** (Zero Matrix). The $m \times n$ matrix in which each entry equals zero is called the **zero matrix** and is denoted by $O$.

**Definition 1.1.6** (Square Matrix). A matrix is **square** if the number of rows and columns of a matrix are equal.

- Just like our tuple example, the set of all $m \times n$ matrices with entries from a field $F$ form a vector space. Denote this vector space as $M_{m \times n}(F)$ endowed with two operations; that is,

**matrix addition** and **scalar multiplication**. Suppose for $A, B \in M_{m \times n}(F)$ and $c \in F$, we have

$$(A + B)_{ij} = A_{ij} + B_{ij}$$

and

$$(cA)_{ij} = cA_{ij}$$

for $1 \leq i \leq m$ and $1 \leq j \leq n$. In other words, the two operations can be performed entry-wise.

- The operations from our tuple case extends very naturally to $M_{m \times n}(F)$. In other words, if we add two matrices $A_{ij}$ and $B_{ij}$, then we would expect to that $A_{ij} + B_{ij} \in M_{m \times n}(F)$ as well and likewise for the scalar multiplication case.

**Definition 1.1.7** (Set of All Functions). Let $S$ be any nonempty set and $F$ be any field, and let $\mathcal{F}(S, F)$ denote the set of all functions from $S$ to $F$.

**Definition 1.1.8.** Two functions $f, g \in \mathcal{F}(S, F)$ are called **equal** if $f(s) = g(s)$ for each $s \in S$.

The set of functions above forms a vector space with the operations of addition and scalar multiplication defined for every $f, g \in \mathcal{F}(S, F)$ and $c \in F$ with

$$(f + g)(s) = f(s) + g(s) \text{ and } (cf)(s) = cf(s)$$

**Definition 1.1.9** (Set of All Polynomials). A **polynomial** with coefficients from a field $F$ is an expression of the form

$$f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0,$$

where $n$ is a nonnegative integer and each $a_k \in F$ is called the **coefficient** of $x_k$.

**Definition 1.1.10** (Zero Polynomial). We call $f(x) = 0$ the **zero polynomial** if $a_n = a_{n-1} = \cdots = a_0 = 0$.

**Definition 1.1.11** (Degree). The **degree** of a given polynomial $f$ is defined to be the largest exponent of $x$ that appears in the representation

$$f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0.$$

**Definition 1.1.12** (Equality of Polynomials). We call two polynomials $f, g$, where

$$f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$$

and

$$g(x) = b_m x^m + b_{m-1} x^{m-1} + \cdots + b_1 x + b_0,$$

are **equal** if $m = n$ and $a_i = b_i$ for all $i = 0, 1, \ldots, n$.

Suppose we have $c \in F$ and say we evaluated the polynomial $f \in F$ at $c$. Then we would have the following

$$f(c) = a_n c^n + a_{n-1} c^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 c + a_0$$

where $f(c) \in F$.

> **Definition 1.1.13** (Basic Operations of Polynomials). Define polynomial **addition** $f + g$ as the following:
>
> $$f(x) + g(x) = (a_n + b_n)x^n + (a_{n-1} + b_{n-1})x^{n-1} + \cdots + (a_1 + b_1)x + (a_0 + b_0).$$
>
> Let $c \in F$. Let scalar **multiplication** be defined by
>
> $$cf(x) = ca_n x^n + ca_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + ca_1 x + ca_0.$$

The operations above form a vector space for $P(F)$ (the set of all polynomials).

> **Definition 1.1.14** (Sequences). A **sequence** in $F$ is a function $\sigma : \mathbb{Z}^+ \to F$. A given sequence $\sigma$ such that $\sigma(n) = a_n$ for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$ is denoted $(a_n)$.

Let $V$ be the set of all sequences $\sigma(n) \in F$. For every $(a_n), (b_n) \in V$ with $t \in F$, we have the following operations

$$(a_n) + (b_n) = (a_n + b_n) \text{ and } t(a_n) = (ta_n).$$

### 1.1.2   Non-examples

> **Example 1.1.2.** Let $S = \{(a_1, a_2) : a_1, a_2 \in R\}$ where $R$ is a field. For every $(a_1, a_2), (b_1, b_2) \in S$ and $c \in R$, define
>
> $$(a_1, a_2) + (b_1, b_2) = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 - b_2) \text{ and } c(a_1, a_2) = (ca_1, ca_2).$$
>
> Note that $S$ is **NOT** a vector space since (VS 1), (VS 2), and (VS 8) fail.

> **Example 1.1.3.** Let $S$ be the same set as in the last example. For $(a_1, a_2), (b_1, b_2) \in S$ and $c \in R$, define
> $$(a_1, a_2) + (b_1, b_2) = (a_1 + b_1, 0)$$
> and
> $$c(a_1, a_2) = (ca_1, 0).$$
> Note that $S$ is **NOT** a vector space with these operations since (VS 3), (VS 4), and (VS 5) fail.

### 1.1.3   Basic Extensions from Definition

> **Theorem 1.1.1** (Cancellation Law for Vector Addtion). If $x, y, z \in V$ such that $x + z = y + z$, then $x = y$.

**Proof.** There exists a vector $v \in V$ such that $z + v = O$ (VS 4). Thus, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
x &= x + O \\
&= x + (z + v) \\
&= (x + z) + v \\
&= (y + z) + v \\
&= y + (z + v) \\
&= y + O \\
&= y.
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, we have $x = y$. ∎

**Corollary.** The vector described $O$ described in (VS 3) is unique.

**Proof.** Let $x \in V$. Suppose there exists two elements $O, O' \in V$ such that

$$x + O = x \tag{1}$$

and

$$x + O' = x. \tag{2}$$

Our objective is to show that $O = O'$. Equating (1) and (2), we find that

$$x + O = x + O' \tag{3}$$

Using the Cancellation Law for Vector Addition, (3) implies that $O = O'$. Hence, $O$ is a unique vector in $V$. ∎

**Corollary.** The vector $y$ described in (VS 4) is unique.

**Proof.** Let $x \in V$. Suppose there exists $y, y' \in V$ such that

$$x + y = O \text{ and } x + y' = O.$$

Equating the two equations above, we get that

$$x + y = x + y'.$$

Applying the Cancellation Law for Vector Addition once again, we get that $y = y'$. Hence, $y$ is a unique vector in $V$. ∎

**Theorem 1.1.2** (Properties of a Vector Space). In any vector space $V$, the following statements are true:

(a) $0x = O$ for any $x \in V$.

(b) $(-a)x = -(ax) = a(-x)$ for each $a \in F$ and each $x \in V$.

(c) $a0 = 0$ for any $a \in F$.

**Proof.** (a) Using (VS 8), (VS 3), and (VS 1), it follows that

$$0x + 0x = (0 + 0)x$$
$$= 0x$$
$$= 0x + O$$
$$= O + 0x.$$

Hence, $0x = O$ by Theorem 1.1.

(b) The vector $-(ax)$ is the unique element of $V$ such that $ax + [-(ax)] = O$. If we know that $ax + (-a)x = O$, we can use Corollary 2 to Theorem 1.1 to state that $(-a)x = -(ax)$. But by (VS 8), we have

$$ax + (-ax) = [a + (-a)]x = 0x = O$$

by (a). Hence, we have that $(-a)x = -(ax)$. In particular, we have $(-1)x = -x$. Thus, (VS 6) implies that

$$a(-x) = a[(-1)x] = [a(-1)]x = (-a)x.$$

(c) The proof of (c) is similar to the proof of (a). ∎

## 1.2 Subspaces

> **Definition 1.2.1** (Subspaces). A subset $W$ of a vector space $V$ over a field $F$ is called a **subspace** of $V$ if $W$ is a vector space over $F$ with the operations of addition and scalar multiplication.

The most simple examples of subspaces of $V$ is $V$ itself and the set containing just the zero vector. The latter is denoted as the **zero subspace** of $V$.

We don't have to check all the vector space properties to prove that a subset $W$ of $V$ is a subspace of $V$. This is because vectors in any subset of $V$ already satisfy all the properties of a vector space. Hence, we need only check that $W$ is closed under

1. **Addition**: $x + y \in W$ whenever $x \in W$ and $y \in W$.

2. **Scalar Multiplication**: $cx \in W$ whenever $c \in F$ and $x \in W$.

3. $W$ contains a zero vector.

4. Each vector in $W$ has an additive inverse in $W$.

> **Theorem 1.2.1** (Subspaces). Let $V$ be a vector space and $W$ a subset of $V$. Then $W$ is a subspace of $V$ if and only if the following three conditions hold for the operations defined in $V$.
>
> (a) $O \in W$.
>
> (b) $x + y \in W$ whenever $x \in W$ and $y \in W$.
>
> (c) $cx \in W$ whenever $c \in F$ and $x \in W$.

**Proof.** Suppose $W$ is a subspace of $V$. Since $W$ is also a vector space with the operations of addition and scalar multiplication defined in $V$. Hence, we know that $W$ is closed under addition and scalar multiplication. Note that $W$ contains a zero vector $O' \in W$ such that for any $x \in W$, we have $x + 0' = x$. Since $x$ is also in $V$ (since $W \subseteq V$), we know that $x + 0 = x$. Using the cancellation , we can see that $x + 0' = x + 0$ implies $0' = 0$. Hence, properties (a), (b), and (c) are satisfied.

Conversely, suppose conditions (a), (b), and (c) hold. We need to show that $W$ is a subspace. This tells us that $W$ is closed under addition and scalar multiplication in addition to containing the zero vector. Let $x \in W$. Since $W$ is closed under scalar multiplication, we know that $(-1)x \in W$. By part (b) of theorem 2, we know that $1(-x) = -x \in W$. Hence, $W$ contains an additive inverse and we are done. ∎

The theorem above provides a simpler way to determine whether a given subset of a vector space is a subspace. Instead of using the definition to show that a give subset is a subspace, it is more common to use the result above.

**Definition 1.2.2** (Tranpose). The **transpose** of $A^t$ of an $m \times n$ matrix $A$ is the $n \times m$ matrix obtained from $A$ by interchanging the rows with the columns; that is, $(A^t)_{ij} = A_{ji}$.

**Example 1.2.1.**

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & 5 & -1 \end{pmatrix}^t = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 5 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}^t = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Definition 1.2.3** (Symmetric Matrices). A **symmetric matrix** is a matrix $A$ such that $A^t = A$.

- The easiest example of a symmetric matrix would be a square matrix where $i = j$.

- The set $W$ of all symmetric matrices in $M_{n \times n}(F)$ is a subspace of $M_{n \times n}(F)$ since the conditions of Theorem 1.3 hold.

We can show that $W$ is indeed a subspace.

1. The zero matrix is equal to its transpose and hence belongs to $W$.

2. Suppose $A \in W$ and $B \in W$. Hence, $A^t = A$ and $B^t = B$. Hence, we have

$$(A + B)^t = A^t + B^t = A + B$$

which implies that $A + B \in W$.

3. We have $A \in W$ implies $A^t = A$. Now, let $a \in F$. Then we have that $(aA)^t = aA^t = aA$. Hence, $aA \in W$.

### 1.2.1 Examples of Subspaces

**Example 1.2.2.** Let $n$ be non-negative integer, and let $P_n(F)$ consist of all polynomials in $P(F)$ having degree less than or equal to $n$. We get that $P_n(F)$ is a subspace because:

1. Zero polynomial has degree -1, it is in $P_n(F)$.

2. The sum of two polynomials with degrees less than or equal to $n$ is another a polynomial less than or equal to $n$.

3. The product of a scalar and a polynomial of degree less than or equal to $n$ is a polynomial less than or equal to $n$.

This tells us that $P_n(F)$ is a subspace of the space of all polynomials.

**Example 1.2.3.** Let $C(\mathbb{R})$ denote the set of all continuous real-valued functions defined on $\mathbb{R}$. We know that $C(\mathbb{R})$ is a subset of the vector space $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$ defined in Example 3. We will show that $C(\mathbb{R})$ is a subspace of $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$.

1. Note that the zero function $f(x) = 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ of $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$ is a continuous real-valued function.

2. Let $f, g \in C(\mathbb{R})$. Since the sum of $f$ and $g$ is also continuous for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, we have that $f + g \in C(\mathbb{R})$.

3. Let $c \in \mathbb{R}$ and $f \in C(\mathbb{R})$. We have that for any $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $(cf)(x) = cf(x)$ is a continuous function. Hence, property (c) is satisfied.

Hence, $C(\mathbb{R})$ is a subspace.

**Definition 1.2.4** (Upper Triangular). An $m \times n$ matrix $A$ is called **upper triangular** if all its entries below the diagonal entries are zero; that is, if $A_{ij} = 0$ whenever $i > j$.

**Example 1.2.4.** Let $B$ be an upper triangular $3 \times 4$ matrix

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 8 & 9 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Definition 1.2.5** (Diagonal Matrix). An $n \times n$ matrix $M$ is called a **diagonal matrix** if $M_{ij} = 0$ whenever $i \neq j$; that is, if all its non-diagonal entries are zero.

**Example 1.2.5.** Let $A$ be diagonal $3 \times 3$ matrix.

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Example 1.2.6.** The set of diagonal matrices is a subspace of $M_{n \times n}(F)$. To see why, we have

1. Let $O$ be the zero matrix of $M_{n \times n}(F)$. Since $O$ is also a diagonal matrix, we know that $O$ must be in the set of diagonal matrices.

2. Let $A, B$ in the set of diagonal matrices. Let $i \neq j$ such that

$$(A + B)_{ij} = A_{ij} + B_{ij} = 0 + 0 = 0.$$

Hence, $A + B$ is a diagonal matrix and so addition is closed.

3. Let $A$ be a diagonal matrix as before and let $c \in F$. Let $i \neq j$ again, and observe that

$$(cA)_{ij} = cA_{ij} = c \cdot 0 = 0.$$

Hence, $cA$ is a diagonal matrix and so scalar multiplication is closed.

Since the set of diagonal matrices satisfies all properties of theorem 3, we conclude that it is indeed a subspace of $M_{n \times n}(F)$.

**Definition 1.2.6** (Trace). The **trace** of an $n \times n$ matrix $M$, denoted $\operatorname{tr}(M)$, is the sun of the diagonal entries of $M$; that is,

$$\operatorname{tr}(M) = M_{11} + M_{22} + \cdots + M_{nn}.$$

The set of all $n \times n$ matrices that have a trace equal to zero is a subspace of $M_{n \times n}(F)$ (proved in Exercise 6).

**Example 1.2.7** (Non-example). Denote $V$ as the set of matrices in $M_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$ having non-negative entries. The subset $V$ is not a subspace because it is not closed under scalar multiplication. We can see this by multiplying any matrix in $V$ be a negative number and observe that the entries of said matrix are no longer all non-negative.

We can create subspaces out of other subspaces.

### 1.2.2 Constructing Subspaces Out of Existing Subspaces

**Theorem 1.2.2** (Intersection of Subspaces is a Subspace). Any intersection of subspaces of a vector space $V$ is a subspace of $V$.

**Proof.** Let $C$ be a collection of subspaces of $V$, and let $W$ denote the intersection of the subspaces in $C$. Since every subspace contains the zero vector and the intersection $W \neq \emptyset$, the zero vector $0 \in W$. Let $a \in F$ and $x, y \in W$. Since each subspace of $C$ is closed under addition and scalar multiplication, it follows that $x + y$ and $ax$ are contained each subspace in $C$ and hence $W$ must be closed under addition and closed under scalar multiplication. Thus, $W$ is a subspace of $V$ by theorem 3. ∎

A natural question to ask is whether or not the union of subspaces of a vector space $V$ is a subspace of $V$ too. We can see that indeed the union of subspaces of $V$ satisfy the first first and third property of theorem 3. However, property 2 need not be satisfied all the time. In fact, the union can only be a subspace of $V$ if and only if one the subspaces is a subset of the other.

## 1.3 Linear Combinations and Systems of Linear Equations

### 1.3.1 Linear Combinations

**Definition 1.3.1** (Linear Combinations). Let $V$ be a vector space and $S$ a nonempty subset of $V$. A vector $v \in V$ is called **linear combination** of vectors of $S$ if there exist a finite number of vectors $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n \in S$ and scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ such that

$$v = a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + \cdots + a_n u_n.$$

In this case, we say that $v$ is a linear combination of $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n \in V$ and call $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ the **coefficients** of the linear combination.

- An easy example of a vector expressed as a linear combination is the zero vector $O$ where $0v = O$ for each $v \in V$.

- Determining whether a vector is a linear combination of other vectors often involves solving a system of linear equations.

**Example 1.3.1.** Suppose we wanted to express the vector $(2, 6, 8) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ as a linear combination of

$$u_1 = (1, 2, 1), \ u_2 = (-2, -4, -2), \ u_3 = (0, 2, 3), \ u_4 = (2, 0, -3), \text{ and } u_5 = (-3, 8, 16).$$

Our goal is to find scalars $a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4$ and $a_5$ such that

$$(2, 6, 8) = a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + a_3 u_3 + a_4 u_4 + a_5 u_5.$$

Doing a bit of algebra, we would need to solve the following system of linear equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
a_1 - 2a_2 \phantom{+ 2a_3} + 2a_4 - 3a_5 &= 2 \\
2a_1 - 4a_2 + 2a_3 \phantom{+ 2a_4} + 8a_5 &= 6 \\
a_1 - 2a_2 + 3a_3 \phantom{+ 2a_4} + 16a_5 &= 8
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving the system of equations above involves three types of operations:

1. Interchanging the order of any two equations in the system;

2. multiplying any equation in the system by some non-zero constant;

3. adding a constant multiple of any equation to another equation in the system.

We will learn in a later section that the operations listed above do not change the set of solutions to the original system.

**Example 1.3.2.** We claim that

$$2x^3 - 2x^2 + 12x - 6$$

is a linear combination of

$$x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x - 3 \text{ and } 3x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x - 9$$

in $P_3(\mathbb{R})$, but that

$$3x^3 - 2x^2 + 7x + 8$$

is not. In the first case we wish to find scalars $a$ and $b$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}
2x^3 - 2x^2 + 12x - 6 &= a(x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x - 3) \\
&\quad + b(3x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x - 9) \\
&= (a + 3b)x^3 + (-2a - 5b)x^2 \\
&\quad + (-5a - 4b)x + (-3a - 9b).
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have the following system of linear equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
a + 3b &= 2 \\
-2a - 5b &= -2 \\
-5a - 4b &= 12 \\
-3a - 9b &= -6.
\end{aligned}$$

Adding the appropriate multiples of the first equation to the others in order to eliminate $a$, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}
a + 3b &= 2 \\
b &= 2 \\
11b &= 22 \\
0b &= 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Then we get that $a = -4, b = 2, 0 = 0, 0 = 0$. Hence, we have

$$2x^3 - 2x^2 + 12x - 6 = -4(x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x - 3) + 2(3x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x - 9).$$

Looking at the second case now, we observe that using the preceding technique leads us to the following system of linear equations

$$\begin{aligned}
a + 3b &= 3 \\
-2a - 5b &= -2 \\
-5a - 4b &= 7 \\
-3a - 9b &= 8.
\end{aligned}$$

Eliminating $a$ as before yields the following:

$$\begin{aligned}
a + 3b &= 3 \\
b &= 4 \\
11b &= 22 \\
0 &= 17.
\end{aligned}$$

The presence of the non-sensical result in the last equality tells us that there are no solutions to the system and that the second polynomial cannot be written as a linear combination of the two polynomials.

We can denote the set of all linear combinations of some set of vectors in the following:

### 1.3.2 The Span

**Definition 1.3.2** (Span). Let $S$ be a nonempty subset of a vector space $V$. The **span** of $S$,

denoted span($S$), is the set consisting of all linear combinations of the vectors in $S$. For convenience, we define span($\emptyset$) = $\{0\}$.

Some immediate examples of spans are:

**Example 1.3.3.** In $\mathbb{R}^3$, the span of the set $S = \{(1,0,0),(0,1,0)\}$ consist of all vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ such that for some scalars $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$a(1,0,0) + b(0,1,0) = (a,b,0).$$

This tells us that $S$ contains all the points in the $xy$-plane. One can show that $S$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

**Theorem 1.3.1** (The Span of Subset is a Subspace). The span of any subset $S$ of a vector space $v$ is a subspace of $V$ that contains $S$. Moreover, any subspace of $V$ that contains $S$ must also contain the span of $S$.

**Proof.** Suppose $S = \emptyset$. Then the span of $S$ is just span($\emptyset$) = $\{0\}$ which is a subspace in which $S$ is contained in. Moreover, span($\emptyset$) = $\{0\}$ is always contained in any subspace $X$ of $V$ because every subspace contains the zero vector 0. Suppose $S \neq \emptyset$, then $S$ contains a vector $z$. We need to show that span($S$) is a subspace of $V$.

(a) Since $S \neq \emptyset$, we know that $S$ contains a vector $v$ such that $0z = 0$. Hence, $0 \in$ span($S$).

(b) Let $x, y \in$ span($S$). We need to show that $x + y \in$ span($S$). If $x \in$ span($S$), then we can find $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ and $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \in S$ such that

$$a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \cdots + a_n x_n.$$

Likewise, $y \in$ span($S$) implies that we can find scalars $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_m$ and vectors $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_m$ such that

$$b_1 y_1 + b_2 y_2 + \cdots + b_m y_m.$$

Then

$$x + y = a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \cdots + a_n x_n + b_1 y_1 + b_2 y_2 + \cdots + b_m y_m$$

is a linear combination and thus $x + y \in$ span($S$).

(c) Note that $c \in F$ implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
cx &= c(a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \cdots + a_n x_n) \\
&= (ca_1)x_1 + (ca_2)x_2 + \cdots + (ca_n)x_n
\end{aligned}
$$

is a linear combination and thus $cx \in$ span($S$).

Hence, span($S$) is a subspace of $V$. Now we need to show that $S$ is contained within span($S$); that is, $S \subseteq$ span($S$). Let $v \in S$. Then using (VS 5), we can see that $1 \cdot v = v$ is a linear combination; so we have $v \in$ span($S$) and hence, the span of $S$ contains $S$.

Now let $W$ be any subspace of $V$ that contains $S$. We need to show that $\operatorname{span}(S) \subseteq W$. Let $v \in \operatorname{span}(S)$. Then we can find scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ and $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \in S$ such that

$$v = a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \cdots + a_n x_n.$$

Since $S \subseteq W$, we know that $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \in W$. Using exercise 20 from section 1.3 and using the same set of scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$, we have $v = a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \cdots + a_n x_n \in W$. Hence, $\operatorname{span}(S) \subseteq W$. ∎

### 1.3.3   Generating a Vector Space

**Definition 1.3.3** (Generating/Spanning Sets). A subset $S$ of a vector space $V$ **generates** (or **spans**) $V$ if $\operatorname{span}(S) = V$. In this case, we also say that the vectors of $S$ generates (or span) $V$.

**Example 1.3.4** (Vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$). The vectors $(1,1,0), (1,0,1), (0,1,1)$ generate $\mathbb{R}^3$ since any given vector $v \in \mathbb{R}^3$ is a linear combination of the three given vectors. Furthermore, there exists scalars $r, s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$r(1,1,0) + s(1,0,1) + t(0,1,1) = (a_1, a_2, a_3) = v$$

where

$$r = \tfrac{1}{2}(a_1 + a_2 - a_3), s = \tfrac{1}{2}(a_1 - a_2 + a_3) \text{ and } t = \tfrac{1}{2}(-a_1 + a_2 + a_3).$$

**Example 1.3.5** (Polynomials). The polynomials $x^2 + 3x - 2, 2x^2 + 5x - 3$, and $-x^2 - 4x + 4$ generate $P_2(\mathbb{R})$ because each of the three given polynomials belongs to $P_2(\mathbb{R})$ and each polynomial $ax^2 + bx + c \in P_2(\mathbb{R})$ is a linear combination of these three. It can be shown that we can find $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$a(x^2 + 3x - 2) + b(2x^2 + 5x - 3) + c(-x^2 - 4x + 4) = ax^2 + bx + c.$$

**Example 1.3.6** (Matrices). Note that the matrices

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

generate $M_{2\times2}(\mathbb{R})$ because an every $A \in M_{2\times2}(\mathbb{R})$ can be expressed as a linear combination of the four given matrices found below where there exists scalars $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{pmatrix} = a \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + b \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + c \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + d \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

where it can be show that

$$a = \frac{1}{3}a_{11} + \frac{1}{3}a_{12} + \frac{1}{3}a_{21} - \frac{2}{3}a_{22}$$
$$b = \frac{1}{3}a_{11} + \frac{1}{3}a_{12} - \frac{2}{3}a_{21} + \frac{1}{3}a_{22}$$
$$c = \frac{1}{3}a_{11} - \frac{2}{3}a_{12} + \frac{1}{3}a_{21} + \frac{1}{3}a_{22}$$
$$d = -\frac{2}{3}a_{11} + \frac{1}{3}a_{12} + \frac{1}{3}a_{21} + \frac{1}{3}a_{22}.$$

A non-example set of matrices are

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

do not generate $M_{2\times2}(\mathbb{R})$ since all of the matrices have equal diagonal entries. Thus, every the set of matrices above cannot generate every $A \in M_{2\times2}(\mathbb{R})$.

## 1.4 Linear Dependence and Linear Independence

### 1.4.1 Motivation

Suppose $V$ is a vector space over a field $F$ and that $W \subseteq V$ is a subspace of $V$.

- Suppose we have a set $S$ that will generate every vector in $V$ as a linear combination of vectors in $S$.

- It is desirable to find a subset of $S$ that is as small as possible or rather just enough to generate each vector in $V$.

- The reason for this is to reduce the amount of computations done to represent a vector in $V$.

- Finding this subset is a matter of expressing one of the vectors in the spanning set as a linear combination of the other vectors in $S$.

- This will naturally lead to a system of linear equations for which we have to solve for the coefficients.

- The answer to the question is whether this system of equations leads to a solution or not.

- An easier way to answer this question is to find coefficients (not all zero) for which the zero vector can be written as a linear combination of vectors in $S$.

- Doing this, guarantees that we can write any one of the vectors in $S$ as a linear combination of the others.

**Definition 1.4.1** (Linearly Dependence). A subset $S$ of a vector space $V$ is called **linearly dependent** if there exists a finite number of distinct vectors in $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n \in S$ and scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ not all zero, such that

$$a_1u_1 + a_2u_2 + \cdots + a_nu_n = 0.$$

In this case, we also say that the vectors of $S$ are linearly dependent.

- The **trivial representation** of 0 is a linear combination of scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ and distinct vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n \in S$ where for all $1 \leq i \leq n$, we have $a_i = 0$.

- This tells us that our definition of **linear dependence** implies that 0 is a non-trivial linear combination.

- Any subset of $V$ that contains the zero vector is subsequently linearly dependent since 0 can be written as non-trivial representation; that is, $1 \cdot 0 = 0$.

## 1.4.2 Examples of Linearly Dependent Sets

**Example 1.4.1.** Consider a subset in $\mathbb{R}^4$ defined by

$$S = \{(1, 3, -4, 2), (2, 2, -4, 0), (1, -3, 2, -4), (-1, 0, 1, 0)\}.$$

To show that $S$ is a linear dependent set, we need to find scalars $a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4 \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $a_i$ for all $1 \leq i \leq 4$ not all zero such that

$$a_1(1, 3, -3, 2) + a_2(2, 2, -4, 0) + a_3(1, -3, 2, -4) + a_4(-1, 0, 1, 0) = 0.$$

We can represent this as a system of linear equations with each equation being set equal to zero and solving for the scalars. Solving this system of equations leads to the coefficients $a_1 = 4, a_2 = -3, a_3 = 2$, and $a_4 = 0$. Thus, we have that $S$ is linearly dependent subset of $\mathbb{R}^4$ and hence we can write any vector in $S$ as a linear combination of the other vectors contained in $S$.

**Example 1.4.2.** Define a subset of $M_{2\times 2}(\mathbb{R})$

$$S = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 & 2 \\ -4 & 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \}, \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 7 & 4 \\ 6 & -2 & -7 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 3 & 11 \\ -1 & -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \right\}.$$

This set is **linearly dependent** because we can find coefficients $a_1, a_2, a_3$ such that $a_1 = 5, a_2 = 3$, and $a_3 = -2$ where

$$5 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 & 2 \\ -4 & 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix} + 3 \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 7 & 4 \\ 6 & -2 & -7 \end{pmatrix} - 2 \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 3 & 11 \\ -1 & -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Definition 1.4.2** (Linear Independence). A subset $S$ of a vector space that is not linearly dependent is called **linearly independent**. As before, we also say that the vectors of $S$ are linearly independent.

Whereas linear dependence requires solutions that are not all zero, linear independence **requires** all the solutions to be zero. This provides us an easy way to determine if a finite set is linearly independent.

## 1.4.3 Examples of Linear Independent Sets

Some facts about linearly independent sets include:

- The empty set is linearly independent since we don't have any vectors to take linear combinations of.

- A set consisting of only one non-zero vector; that is, $\{v\}$ is linearly independent.

- If $\{v\}$ is linearly dependent, then it the singleton has to be the zero vector 0. This is because $au = 0$
$$u = 1 \cdot u = (a^{-1}a)u = a^{-1}(au) = a^{-1} \cdot 0 = 0.$$

**Example 1.4.3** (A Set of Vectors in $\mathbb{R}^4$). It can be shown that the set

$$S = \{(1, 0, 0, -1), (0, 1, 0, -1), (0, 0, 1, -1), (0, 0, 0, 1)\}$$

is linearly independent by showing that all the coefficients of the linear combination of 0 represent the trivial representation; that is, we have scalars $a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = a_4 = 0$.

**Example 1.4.4.** For $k = 0, 1, \ldots, n$, let $p_k = x^k + x^{k+1} + \cdots + x^n$. The set

$$\{p_0(x), p_1(x), \ldots p_n(x)\}$$

is linearly independent in $P_n(F)$. It can be shown that for some scalars $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n \in F$, the following equation

$$a_0 + (a_0 + a_1 + a_2)x^2 + \cdots + (a_0 + a_1 + \cdots + a_n)x^n = 0$$

has the trivial-representation; that is, $a_i = 0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$.

**Theorem 1.4.1** (Linearly Dependent Subsets). Let $V$ be a vector space, and let $S_1 \subseteq S_2 \subseteq V$. If $S_1$ is linearly dependent, then $S_2$ is linearly dependent.

**Proof.** Let $V$ be a vector space. Suppose $S_1$ is linearly dependent. Then there exists a finite number of distinct vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n \in S_1$ and scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ not all zero such that
$$a_1v_1 + a_2v_2 + \cdots + a_nv_n = 0.$$

Since $S_1 \subseteq S_2$, we must have $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n \in S_2$ as well. If these vectors are linearly dependent, then these vectors are also linearly dependent in $S_2$; that is, we have scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ not all zero such that

$$a_1v_1 + a_2v_2 + \cdots + a_nv_n = 0.$$

Hence, $S_2$ is linearly dependent. ∎

**Corollary** (Linearly Independent Subsets). Let $V$ be a vector space, and let $S_1 \subseteq S_2 \subseteq V$. If $S_2$ is linearly independent, then $S_1$ is linearly independent.

**Proof.** Note that this corollary is just the contrapositive of the theorem before it. Hence, $S_1$ is linearly independent. ∎

- Determining whether there exists a minimal generating set for the span of $S$ is related to solving the problem of finding whether some vector in $S$ that can be written in terms of a linear combination of other vectors in $S$.

- We can see that in a given subset of $\mathbb{R}^3$ defined by

$$S = \{u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4\}$$

CHAPTER 1. VECTOR SPACES

where $u_1 = (2, -1, 4), u_2 = (1, -1, 3), u_3 = (1, 1, -1)$, and $u_4 = (1, -2, 1)$. Note that this $S$ is linearly dependent. This tells us that any vector in $S$ can be written as a linear combination of the others. Suppose we pick $u_3$ and write as a linear combination of the vectors $u_1, u_2$, and $u_4$. We would find that the span of these three vectors (denote this set as $S'$) generates the same spanning set $S$ but with a cardinality one less than $S$; that is, $\text{span}(S) = \text{span}(S')$.

- If we find that there does not exist a proper subset that is equivalent to the span of $S$, then $S$ must be a linearly independent set.

**Theorem 1.4.2** (Adjoining Elements not in Linearly Independent Sets). Let $S$ be a linearly independent subset of a vector space $V$, and let $v \in V$ but not in $S$. Then $S \cup \{v\}$ is linearly dependent if and only if $v \in \text{span}(S)$.

**Proof.** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) Suppose $S \cup \{v\}$ is a linearly dependent set. Then there exists a finite number of scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ and vectors $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n \in S \cup \{v\}$ such that

$$a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + \cdots + a_n u_n = 0.$$

Since $S$ is a linearly independent set, we must have $u_i = v$ for some $1 \leq i \leq n$. Choose $i = 1$ (any choice of $i$ will do) such that

$$a_1 v + a_2 u_2 + \cdots + a_n u_n = 0.$$

Solving for $v$ by subtracting $a_1 v$ on both sides, multiplying by $a_1^{-1}$ on both sides of the equation, and distributing by $a_1^{-1}$ yields the following:

$$v = (-a_1^{-1} a_2) u_2 + (-a_1^{-1} a_3) u_3 + \cdots + (-a_1^{-1} a_n) u_n.$$

Since $v$ is a linear combination of vectors $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n \in S$, we know that $v \in \text{span}(S)$.
   ( $\Leftarrow$ ) Conversely, suppose $v \in \text{span}(S)$. This implies that there exists a finite amount of scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ and $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n \in S$ such that

$$v = a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + \cdots + a_n u_n.$$

Subtracting $v$ from both sides of the equation above gives us the following equation:

$$a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + \cdots + a_n u_n - v = 0.$$

Note that $v$ is not contained in $S$, so $v \neq u_i$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$. Since $S$ is a linearly independent set, we know that $a_i = 0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$. This implies that the only coefficient that is non-zero is with $-v = -1v$. Hence, the set of vectors $S' = \{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n, v\}$ is linearly dependent. Since $S' \subseteq S \cup \{v\}$, we know that $S \cup \{v\}$ is also linearly independent by Theorem 6. ∎

## 1.5 Bases And Dimension

### 1.5.1 Bases

- Recall that $S$ is a generating set for a subspace $W$ and no proper subset of $S$ is a generating set for $W$, then $S$ must be linearly independent.

- Linearly independent sets possess the unique property that every vector that its spanning set generates is unique.

- This is property is what allows generating sets to be the building blocks of vector spaces.

**Definition 1.5.1** (Basis). A **basis** $\beta$ for a vector space $V$ is linearly independent subset of $V$ that generates $V$. If $\beta$ is a basis for $V$, we also say that the vectors of $\beta$ form a basis for $V$.

**Example 1.5.1.**
- Recall that the empty set $\emptyset$ is linearly independent and that $\text{span}(\emptyset) = \{0\}$. The empty set $\emptyset$ in this case is the basis for the zero vector space.

- Note that in $F^n$, the vectors $e_1 = (1, 0, \ldots, 0)$, $e_2 = (0, 1, 0, \ldots, 0) \ldots, e_n = (0, 0, \ldots, 0, 1)$ form a basis for $F^n$.

- The basis for $M_{m \times n}(F)$ is the set of matrices $E^{ij}$ such that the only nonzero entry is a 1 in the $i$th and $j$th column.

- As we have seen in the last section, the set $\{1, x, x^2, \ldots, x^n\}$ is a basis for $P_n(F)$.

- In $P(F)$, the set $\{1, x, x, x^2, \ldots\}$ is a basis. *Bases are not limited to finite sets. They can be infinite.*

**Theorem 1.5.1** (Unique Linear Combinations from Bases). Let $V$ be a vector space and $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n$ be distinct vectors in $V$. Then $\beta = \{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n\}$ is a basis for $V$ if and only if each $v \in V$ can be unique expressed as a linear combination of vectors in $\beta$, that is, expressed in the form

$$v = a_1 v_1 + a_2 v_2 + \cdots + a_n v_n$$

for unique scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$.

**Proof.** ($\Rightarrow$) Suppose $\beta = \{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n\}$ is a basis for $V$. Then $\text{span}(\beta) = V$. If $v \in V$, then $v \in \text{span}(\beta)$. Hence, we can write $v$ as a linear combination of vectors in $\beta$ such that choosing scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ leads to

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i u_i.$$

Suppose there exists another representation of $v \in V$ such that

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^{n} b_i x_i$$

Hence, observe that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i x_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} b_i y_i$$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^{n} (a_i - b_i) x_i = 0.$$

Since $\beta$ is linearly independent, we know that $a_i - b_i = 0$ which implies $a_i = b_i$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$. Hence, $v$ can be expressed as a unique linear combination of vectors in $\beta$.

($\Longleftarrow$) Conversely, let $v \in V$ be expressed as a unique linear combination of vectors in $\beta$ such that

$$v = a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + \cdots + a_n u_n \tag{1}$$

for unique scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$. We want to show that $\beta$ is a basis for $V$; that is, we want to show that $\beta$ is a spanning set for $V$ and $\beta$ is linearly independent. To show that $\beta$ is a spanning set for $V$, we need to show that $\text{span}(\beta) \subseteq V$ and $V \subseteq \text{span}(\beta)$. Note that $\beta \subseteq V$ and $\text{span}(\beta)$ is a subspace for $V$. Hence, $\text{span}(\beta) \subseteq V$. On the other hand, $V \subseteq \text{span}(\beta)$ follows immediately from (1). To show that $\beta$ is linearly independent, we need to show that for scalars $\delta_1, \delta_2, \ldots, \delta_n$, we have

$$\delta_1 u_1 + \delta_2 u_2 + \cdots + \delta_n u_n = 0$$

such that $u_i = 0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$. Note that $v + 0 = v$. Hence, we can write

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i u_i + \sum_{i=1}^{n} \delta_i u_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i u_i$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} (a_i + \delta_i) u_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i u_i$$

Equating each term in the equation above yields the following equality:

$$a_i + \delta_i = a_i \Rightarrow \delta_i = 0$$

for all $1 \leq i \leq n$. But this tells us that $\beta$ is linearly independent and we are done. $\blacksquare$

- Any vector $v \in V$ can be written as a linear combination of vectors from the basis containing $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n \in V$.

- This determines a unique $n$-tuple of scalars $(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)$ and conversely, each $n$-tuple of scalars determines a unique vector $v \in V$ such that each coefficient from the linear combination of $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n$ is an entry from said tuple.

- For example, in our vector space $F^n$, $n$ is the number of vectors that should be in the basis for $F^n$ which is indeed the case.

- In this book, we are only concerned with finite bases.

**Theorem 1.5.2** (Finite Spanning Set For a Vector Space). If a vector space $V$ is generated by a finite set $S$, then some subset of $S$ is a basis for $V$. Hence, $V$ has a finite basis.

**Proof.** Suppose $S = \emptyset$ or $S = \{0\}$, then $V = \{0\}$ and $\emptyset$ is a subset of $S$ that is a basis for $V$. If $S$ neither of these choices, then $S$ must contain at least one nonzero vector $u_1$; that is, $S = \{u_1\}$. Since $u_1$ is nonzero, it follows that $S$ is a linearly independent set. We can continue this process of adding vectors $u_2, \ldots, u_k$ into $S$ such that $S$ is a linearly independent set of $k$ vectors. Since $S$ is a finite set, we must end with the linearly independent set $\beta = \{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n\}$. There are two cases for which this occurs, either $\beta = S$ or $\beta \subseteq S$:

(i) Suppose that $\beta = S$ (remember that $\beta$ is a finite set by construction). Then we have $S$ is a linearly independent set and spanning set for $V$ (since $S$ is a finite set that generates $V$). Hence, $S$ is a finite basis for $V$.

(ii) Suppose $\beta \subseteq S$ is a linearly independent set such that adding $v \in S$ where $v \notin \beta$ makes a linearly dependent set. We claim that $\beta$ is the desired subset of $S$ that is a basis for $V$. Then we have two cases; that is, either $v \in \beta$ or $v \notin \beta$. Since $\beta \subseteq S$, we know by Theorem 1.5 that $\text{span}(\beta) \subseteq S$ (This applies for both cases). It suffices to show that $S \subseteq \text{span}(\beta)$. If $v \in \beta$, then surely $v \in \text{span}(\beta)$. Hence, we have $S \subseteq \text{span}(\beta)$. Suppose $v \notin \beta$. Since $\beta$ is a linearly independent set, then by Theorem 1.7 , we have that $\beta \cup \{v\}$ being linearly dependent implies that $v \in \text{span}(\beta)$. Hence, $S \subseteq \text{span}(\beta)$. Thus, that both cases implies that $\beta$ is a spanning set for $V$.

■

This theorem tells us that any spanning set of a vector space $V$ can reduced to a finite basis for $V$. This is illustrated in the following examples.

**Example 1.5.2.** Define

$$S = \{(2, -3, 5), (8, -12, 20), (1, 0, -2), (0, 2, -1), (7, 2, 0)\}$$

which can be shown to generate $\mathbb{R}^3$. The idea is to create a proper subset of $S$ such that none of the vectors in $\beta$ are a multiples of each other. In other words, we want a set that is linearly independent; that is, our choices of vectors determine whether a set will be linearly dependent or independent (we want the latter to hold). Say, we pick $(2, -3, 5)$ as our first vector in our subset $\beta$. Right away, we can exclude $(8, -12, 20)$ since it is a multiple of $(2, -3, 5)$. Otherwise, including it would make $\beta$ linearly dependent (see exercise 9 from section 1.5). Next, add the vectors $(1, 0, -2)$ and $(0, 2, -1)$ since they are not multiples of the other. Narrowing down our set to

$$\beta = \{(2, -3, 5), (1, 0, -2), (0, 2, -1)\}.$$

Note that adding the vector $(7, 2, 0)$ makes $\beta$ linearly dependent, so $(7, 2, 0)$ is excluded from the list. Hence, we have arrived at a subset of $S$ such that $\beta \subseteq S$ is both a linearly independent set and spanning set for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

The following theorem and its corollaries are the most important results in the Chapter 1.

### 1.5.2 Dimensions

**Theorem 1.5.3** (Replacement Theorem). Let $V$ be a vector space that is generated by a set $G$ containing exactly $n$ vectors, and let $L$ be a linearly independent subset of $V$ containing exactly $m$ vectors. Then $m \leq n$ and there exists a subset $H$ of $G$ containing exactly $n - m$ vectors such that $L \cup H$ generates $V$.

**Proof.** Let us proceed the proof via induction on $m$. Let $m = 0$ be our base case. Then we find that $L = \emptyset$ is linearly independent set with exactly 0 vectors. Letting $H = G$ gives us the desired result (since $G$ contains exactly $n$ vectors). Now suppose that the theorem is holds for some integer $m \geq 0$. We will show that the theorem holds for the $m+1$ case. Let $L = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_{m+1}\}$ be a linearly independent subset of $V$ consisting of exactly $m+1$ vectors. By the corollary to Theorem 1.6 , we find that $L' = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m\}$ is a linearly independent set (because $L' \subseteq L$ and $L$ is linearly independent). Using our induction hypothesis, we

can conclude that $m \leq n$ and that there exists a subset $H' = \{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_{n-m}\}$ of $G$ such that $L' \cup H'$ generates $V$. Thus there exists scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots a_m, b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_{n-m}$ such that

$$v_{m+1} = a_1 v_1 + a_2 v_2 + \cdots + a_m v_m + b_1 u_1 + b_2 u_2 + \cdots + b_{n-m} u_{n-m}. \tag{1}$$

Note that $n - m > 0$, **unless** $v_{m+1}$ is a linear combination of $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m$ which by Theorem 1.7 contradicts the assumption that $L$ is a linearly independent set. Hence, $n > m$; that is, $n \geq m + 1$. Furthermore, some $b_i$, say $b_1$ is nonzero, for otherwise we obtain the same contradiction. Solving (1) for $u_1$, we get

$$u_1 = (-b_1^{-1} a_1) v_1 + (-b_1^{-1} a_2) v_2 + \cdots + (-b_1^{-1}) v_m + (b_1^{-1}) v_{m+1}$$
$$+ (-b_1^{-1} b_2) u_2 + \cdots + (-b_1^{-1} b_{n-m}) u_{n-m}.$$

Let $H = \{u_2, u_3, \ldots, u_{n-m}\}$. Then $u_1 \in \text{span}(L \cup H)$ and because $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m, u_2, \ldots, u_{n-m}$ are clearly in $\text{span}(L \cup H)$, we have that

$$L' \cup H' \subseteq \text{span}(L \cup H).$$

Since $L' \cup H'$ generates $V$ and the fact that $L' \cup H' \subseteq \text{span}(L \cup H)$ (note that $\text{span}(L \cup H)$ is also a subspace), we know by Theorem 1.5 that $\text{span}(L' \cup H') \subseteq \text{span}(L \cup H)$. Since $\text{span}(L' \cup H')$ generates $V$, we know that $V \subseteq \text{span}(L' \cup H') \subseteq \text{span}(L \cup H)$. Observe that $\text{span}(L \cup H) \subseteq V$ is true by default. Hence, $\text{span}(L \cup H)$ generates $V$ and that $H$ contains $(n - m) - 1 = n - (m + 1)$ vectors which concludes our induction proof. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $V$ be a vector space having a finite basis. Then all bases for $V$ are finite, and every basis for $V$ contains the same number of vectors.

**Proof.** Let $\beta$ be a finite basis for $V$ that contains exactly $n$ vectors. Let $\gamma$ be any other basis that contains more than $n$ vectors. Suppose we pick a subset $S$ of $\gamma$ such that this subset contains exactly $n + 1$ vectors. Since $\beta$ is a finite basis for $V$, we know that $\beta$ is a linearly independent set. By Theorem 1.6, we know that $S$ is also a linearly independent set. By Replacement Theorem, we have that $n + 1 \leq n$ which is a contradiction. Therefore, we must have $\gamma$ is finite, and $\gamma$ contains exactly $m$ amount of vectors in $\gamma$ which satisfies $m \leq n$. To show that $n \leq m$, we can reverse the roles of $\beta$ and $\gamma$ and use the same argument as above. Hence, $n \leq m$ and thus $m = n$. ∎

The main takeaway from the corollary above is that the number of vectors in any basis for $V$ is an inherent property of $V$.

**Definition 1.5.2 (Finite-dimensional).** A vector space is **finite-dimensional** if it has a basis consisting of a finite number of vectors.

**Definition 1.5.3 (Dimension of a Vector Space).** The unique integer $n$ such that every basis for $V$ contains exactly $n$ elements is called the **dimension** of $V$ and is denoted by $\dim(V)$.

**Definition 1.5.4 (Infinite-dimensional).** A vector space that is not finite-dimensional is called **infinite-dimensional**.

**Example 1.5.3.**  • The vector space $\{0\}$ has dimension zero. This is because $\{0\}$ is

generated by the empty set $\emptyset$.

- The vector space $F^n$ has dimension $n$.

- The vector space $M_{m \times n}(F)$ has dimension $mn$.

- The vector space $P_n(F)$ has dimension $n+1$.

It turns out that the dimension of a vector space depends on the choice of the field it's defined on.

**Example 1.5.4.** • Over the field of complex numbers, the vector space of complex numbers has dimension 1. (A basis is $\{1\}$).

- On the other hand, if $\mathbb{C}$ is defined over the real numbers $\mathbb{R}$, then the vector space has dimension 2.

The first conclusion of the replacement theorem states that given a finite-dimensional vector space, a linearly independent subset of $V$ cannot contain no more than $\dim(V)$ amount of vectors.

**Example 1.5.5** (Example of an Infinite-Dimensional Vector Space)**.** The vector space $P(F)$ is infinite-dimensional since it contains a linearly independent set $\{1, x, x^2, \dots\}$ that is infinite. This is peculiar because all of the results in this section thus far does not guarantee that an infinite-dimensional vector space containing a basis. In fact, it is proven in section 1.7 that infinite-dimensional vector space are guaranteed to have a basis.

The next corollary from the Replacement Theorem refers to the size of the generating set.

**Corollary.** Let $V$ be a vector space with dimension $n$.

(a) Any finite generating set for $V$ contains at least $n$ vectors, and a generating set for $V$ that contains exactly $n$ vectors is a basis for $V$.

(b) Any linearly independent subset of $V$ that contains exactly $n$ vectors is a basis for $V$.

(c) Every linearly independent subset of $V$ can be extended to a basis for $V$, that is, if $L$ is a linearly independent subset of $V$, then there is a basis $\beta$ of $V$ such that $L \subseteq \beta$.

**Proof.** Let $\beta$ be a basis for $V$.

(a) Let $\beta$ be a finite generating set for $V$. By Theorem 1.9, $\beta$ contains a subset $S$ such that $S$ is a finite basis for $V$. Since $V$ is a vector space with dimension $n$, we know that $S$ contains exactly $n$ vectors. This means that $\beta$ must contain at least $n$ vectors since $S \subseteq \beta$.

(b) Let $L$ be a linearly independent subset of $V$ that contains exactly $n$ vectors. Since $\beta$ is a generating set for $V$, the Replacement Theorem states that we can find a subset of $\beta$, say $L'$, such that $L'$ contains exactly $n - n = 0$ vectors implies that $L' = \emptyset$ and $L \cup L' = L \cup \emptyset = L$ generates $V$. Since $L$ is also linearly independent, we conclude that $L$ is a basis for $V$.

(c) Let $L$ be a linearly independent subset of $V$ containing $m$ vectors. Then the Replacement Theorem implies that there exists $H \subseteq \beta$ containing $n - m$, where $\beta$ is the generating set of $V$ with exactly $n$ amount of vectors, such that $L \cup H$ generates $V$ and is finite. This implies that $L \cup H$ must contain at most $n$ vectors, but part (a)

also tells us that $L \cup H$ contains at least $n$ vectors, so $L \cup H$ must contain exactly $n$ vectors. Hence, $L \cup H$ is a basis for $V$.

■

**Example 1.5.6.** • In Example 1.3.5 the set

$$\{x^2 + 3x - 2, 2x^2 + 5x - 3, -x^2 - 4x + 4\}$$

is a generating set for $P_2(\mathbb{R})$ that contains exactly 3 vectors. Hence, the set above is a basis for $P_2(\mathbb{R})$ by part (a).

• It follows from Example 1.3.6 and (a) of the second corollary to the Replacement Theorem that the set

$$\left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is a basis for $M_{2\times 2}(\mathbb{R})$.

• The set in Example 1.4.3 is a basis for $\mathbb{R}^4$.

• See Example 1.4.4. This set is a basis for $P_n(F)$.

### 1.5.3 An Overview of Dimension and Its Consequences

The main takeaways from our results are:

- We can reduce a finite generating set into a basis for a vector space $V$.

- A finite generating set contains at least $n$ amount of vectors.

- A linearly independent set of vectors contain at most $n$ amount of vectors.

- We can Extend a linearly independent set into a basis for $V$.

- A finite basis for $V$ must contain exactly $n$ vectors.

- Any basis for $V$ contains the same number of vectors. In other words, if a basis for $V$, say $\beta$, contains $n$ amount of vectors then any other basis must contain the same amount.

- The number of vectors in a basis is the dimension of a vector space.

### 1.5.4 The Dimension of Subspaces

We can relate the dimension of a vector space $V$ to a subspace of $V$.

**Theorem 1.5.4** (Dimension of Subspaces). Let $W$ be a subspace of a finite-dimensional vector space $V$. Then $W$ is a finite-dimensional and $\dim(W) \leq \dim(V)$. Moreover, if $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$, then $V = W$.

**Proof.** Let $\dim(V) = n$ since $V$ is finite-dimensional. Suppose $W = \{0\}$. Then $W$ contains the empty set $\emptyset$ such that $\text{span}(\emptyset) = W$ and $\emptyset$ is linearly independent. Hence, $\emptyset$ is a subset of $W$ that is a basis for $W = \{0\}$ that contains 0 vectors. Hence, $W$ is finite-dimensional. Otherwise, $W$ contains a nonzero vector $= x_1$ such that $W' = \{x_1\}$ is a linearly independent set. Continue this process of adding vectors $x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_k$ into $W'$ such that $W'$ is linearly

independent. Since no linearly independent subset of $V$ cannot contain no more than $n$ vectors, this process must stop at $k \leq n$. Note adding a vector from $w \in W$ into $W'$ such that $w \notin W'$ will make a linearly dependent set. By Theorem 1.4.2, we get that $w \in \text{span}(W')$. Hence, $W'$ is a basis for $W$ and that $\dim(W) = k \leq n = \dim(V)$. Suppose $\dim(W) = n$, then there exists a basis $\beta$ for $W$ such that $\beta$ contains exactly $n$ amount of vectors. Since $\beta$ is also linearly independent and contains the same amount of vectors as a basis for $V$, then we must have that $\beta$ must also be a basis for $V$ by Corollary 2 of the Replacement Theorem. Hence, $W = \text{span}(\beta) = V$. ∎

**Example 1.5.7.**   • Let

$$W = \{(a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5) \in F^5 : a_1 + a_3 + a_5 = 0, a_2 = a_4\}.$$

It can be easily shown that $W$ is a subspace of $F^5$ having

$$\{(-1, 0, 1, 0, 0), (-1, 0, 0, 0, 1), (0, 1, 0, 1, 0)\}$$

as a basis. Hence, $\dim(W) = 3$

- The set of diagonal $n \times n$ matrices is a subspace $W$ of $M_{n \times n}(F)$. A basis for $W$ is the following set
$$\{E^{11}, E^{22}, \ldots, E^{nn}\},$$
where $E^{ij}$ is the matrix in which the only nonzero entry is a 1 in the $i$th row and $j$th column. Thus, we have $\dim(W) = n$.

**Corollary.** If $W$ is a subspace of a finite-dimensional vector space $V$, then any basis for $W$ can be extended to a basis for $V$.

**Proof.** Let $\beta$ be a basis for the subspace $W$. Since $\beta \subseteq W \subseteq V$ is a linearly independent subset of $V$, we know that $\beta$ can be extended as a basis for $V$ by Corollary 2 of the Replacement Theorem. ∎

### 1.5.5   Geometrical View of Subspaces in Euclidean Space

- The subspaces of $R^2$ include $\{0\}$ of dimension 0, $\mathbb{R}$ of dimension 1, and $R^2$ itself.
  - The set $\{0\}$ of zero dimension can be visualized as the origin in $R^2$.
  - The set $\mathbb{R}$ is the field itself and can be visualized as the line $y = cx$ with $c \in \mathbb{R}$ where $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$.
  - The set $\mathbb{R}^2$ is the whole cartesian space itself.

- The subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$ must have subspaces with dimensions $0, 1, 2,$ or $3$. The same logic can be followed from the three bullet points above.

# Chapter 2

# Linear Transformations and Matrices

## 2.1 Linear Transformations, Null Spaces, and Ranges

Suppose we have a function $T$ with domain $V$ and codomain $W$ denoted by $T : V \to W$.

**Definition 2.1.1** (Linear Transformation). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces (over $F$). We call a function $T : V \to W$ a **linear transformation from $V$ to $W$**, for all $x, y \in V$ and $c \in F$, we have

(a) $T(x + y) = T(x) + T(y)$ and

(b) $T(cx) = cT(x)$.

**Remark.** If $F = \mathbb{Q}$, then (a) implies (b) in the definition above. Otherwise, (a) and (b) are logically independent statements.

The following are a list of properties for linear functions:

**Proposition 2.1.1.** Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces (over $F$). If $T : V \to W$ is a **linear transformation from $V$ to $W$**, then the following properties hold:

(a) If $T$ is linear, then $T(0) = 0$.

(b) $T$ is linear if and only if $T(x + y) = T(x) + T(y)$ for all $x, y \in V$ and $c \in F$.

(c) If $T$ is linear, then $T(x - y) = T(x) - T(y)$ for all $x, y \in V$.

(d) $T$ is linear if and only if, for $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \in V$ and $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$, we have

$$T\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i x_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i T(x_i).$$

**Proof.** Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces such that $T : V \to W$.

(a) If $T$ is linear, then $T(0) = 0$. Suppose $T$ is linear, then $T(0 \cdot 0) = 0T(0) = 0$.

(b) We have $T$ is linear if and only if $T(cx + y) = cT(x) + T(y)$ for all $x, y \in V$ and $c \in F$. Suppose $T$ is linear. Let $x, y \in V$ and $c \in F$. Then

$$T(cx + y) = T(cx) + T(y) = cT(x) + T(y).$$

Conversely, if $c = 1$ then
$$T(x + y) = T(x) + T(y).$$

If $y = 0$, then
$$T(cx) = cT(x).$$

Hence, $T$ is a linear transformation.

(c) If $T$ is linear, then $T(x - y) = T(x) - T(y)$ for all $x, y \in V$. Let $x, y \in V$. Suppose $T$ is linear, then
$$T(x - y) = T(x) + T(-y) = T(x) - T(y).$$

(d) $T$ is linear if and only if, for $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \in V$ and $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$, we have
$$T\left( \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i x_i \right) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i T(x_i).$$

Suppose $T$ is linear. Let $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \in V$ and $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ such that
$$v = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i x_i.$$

Then observe that
$$T\left( \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i x_i \right) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} T(a_i x_i) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i T(x_i).$$

Conversely, for $i = 2$ and denote $a_i x_i = y_i$. Then
$$T\left( \sum_{i=1}^{2} a_i x_i \right) = T(a_1 x_1) + T(a_2 x_2) = T(y_1) + T(y_2)$$

and so property 1 is satisfied. If $i = 1$, then
$$T\left( \sum_{i=1}^{1} a_i x_i \right) = a_1 T(x_1)$$

and so property 2 is satisfied. Hence, $T$ is a linear transformation.

■

**Example 2.1.1.** Define
$$T : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2 \text{ by } T(a_1, a_2) = (2a_1 + a_2, a_1).$$

Show that $T$ is linear. Let $c \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$, where $x = (a_1, a_2)$ and $y = (b_1, b_2)$. Then
$$\begin{aligned}
cx + y &= c(a_1, a_2) + (b_1, b_2) \\
&= (ca_1, ca_2) + (b_1, b_2) \\
&= (ca_1 + b_1, ca_2 + b_2).
\end{aligned}$$

So, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
T(cx + y) &= T(ca_1 + b_1, ca_2 + b_2) \\
&= (2(ca_1 + b_1) + ca_2 + b_2, ca_1 + b_1) \\
&= ((2ca_1 + ca_2) + (2b_1 + b_2), ca_1 + b_1) \\
&= (2ca_1 + ca_2, ca_1) + (2b_1 + b_2, b_1) \\
&= c(2a_1 + a_2, a_1) + (2b_1 + b_2, b_1) \\
&= cT(a_1, a_2) + T(b_1, b_2) \\
&= cT(x) + T(y).
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, we have that $T(cx + y) = cT(x) + T(y)$ so $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ is a linear.

### 2.1.1 Examples of Linear Transformations

The most common linear transformations come from geometry:

- Rotations: $T_\theta(a_1, a_2) = (a_1, a_2)$ by performing a counter-clockwise rotation by an angle $\theta$ if $(a_1, a_2) \neq (0, 0)$. This is called **rotation by** $\theta$ and $T_\theta(0, 0) = (0, 0)$ otherwise.

- Reflections about the $x-$axis: $T(a_1, a_2) = (a_1, -a_2)$.

- Projections on the $x-$axis: $T(a_1, a_2) = (a_1, 0)$.

**Example 2.1.2** (Rotations). Define the rotation transformation above by $T_\theta : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ by $T_\theta(a_1, a_2)$ where it is described as above. Our goal in this example is to define an explicit formula of this transformation. Let us fix a nonzero vector $(a_1, a_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. Let $\alpha$ be the angle such that $(a_1, a_2)$ makes with the positive $x-$axis, and let $r = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2}$. Then using some trigonometry, we get that $a_1 = r\cos(\alpha)$ and $a_2 = r\sin(\alpha)$. Note that $T_\theta(a_1, a_2)$ has length $r$ and makes an angle $\alpha + \theta$ with the positive $x-$axis. Using some trigonometric identities, we get that

$$
\begin{aligned}
T_\theta(a_1, a_2) &= (r\cos(\alpha + \theta), r\sin(\alpha + \theta)) \\
&= (r\cos(\alpha)\cos(\theta) - r\sin(\alpha)\sin(\theta), r\cos(\alpha)\sin(\theta) + r\sin(\alpha)\cos(\theta)) \\
&= (a_1\cos(\theta) - a_2\sin(\theta), a_1\sin(\theta) + a_2\cos(\theta)).
\end{aligned}
$$

Observe that this formula holds for $(a_1, a_2) = (0, 0)$. One can show that $T_\theta$ is linear.

**Example 2.1.3** (Transpose). Define $T : M_{m \times n}(F) \to M_{n \times m}(F)$ by $T(A) = A^t$, where $A^t$ is the transpose of $A$, defined in Section 1.3.

**Example 2.1.4** (Derivatives of Polynomials). Define $T : P_n(\mathbb{R}) \to P_{n-1}(\mathbb{R})$ by $T(f(x)) = f'(x)$, where $f'(x)$ denotes the derivative of $f(x)$. We can show that $T$ is linear. Let $g(x), h(x) \in P_n(\mathbb{R})$ and $a \in \mathbb{R}$. Assuming that the differentiation rules holds for any $T$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
T(ag(x) + h(x)) &= (ag(x) + h(x))' \\
&= ag'(x) + h'(x) \\
&= aT(g(x)) + T(h(x)).
\end{aligned}
$$

By the second property of linearity , we have that $T$ is linear.

**Example 2.1.5** (Integrals). Let $V = C(\mathbb{R})$ be the vector space of continuous real-valued functions on $\mathbb{R}$. Let $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, $a < b$. Define $T : V \to \mathbb{R}$ by

$$T(f) = \int_a^b f(t) \; dt$$

for all $f \in V$. We know that $T$ is a linear transformation because the definite integral of a linear combination of functions is the same as the linear combination of the definite integrals of the functions; that is,

$$\int_a^b \sum_{i=1}^n \gamma_i f(t_i) \; dt = \sum_{i=1}^n \gamma_i \int_a^b f(t_i) \; dt = \sum_{i=1}^n \gamma_i T(f_i)$$

for scalars $\gamma_i$ where $1 \leq i \leq n$ and

$$T(f_i) = \int_a^b f(t_i) \; dt.$$

### 2.1.2   Identity and Zero Transformations

**Remark.** Two very important examples of linear transformations are the **identity and zero transformations**.

**Definition 2.1.2** (Identity Transformation). The **identity transformation** is denoted by $I_V : V \to V$ by $I_V(x) = x$ for all $x \in V$. From now on, we will denote this transformation as $I$ instead of $I_V$.

**Definition 2.1.3** (Zero Transformation). The **zero transformation** is denoted by $T_0 : V \to W$ by $T_0(x) = 0$ for all $x \in V$.

### 2.1.3   Range and Null Spaces

The *Range* and *Null* spaces give us important insights on the intrinsic properties of a linear transformation.

**Definition 2.1.4** (Null Space). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear. The **null space** (or **kernel**), denoted by $N(T)$ of $T$, is the set of all vectors $x \in V$ such that $T(x) = 0$; that is, $N(T) = \{x \in V : T(x) = 0\}$.

**Definition 2.1.5** (Range). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear. The **range** (or **image**) $R(T)$ of $T$ is the subset of $W$ consisting of all images (under $T$) of vectors in $V$; that is, $R(T) = \{T(x) : x \in V\}$.

**Example 2.1.6.** Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $I : V \to V$ and $T_0 : V \to W$ be the identity and zero transformations, respectively. Then $N(I) = \{0\}$, $R(I) = V$, $N(T_0) = V$, and $R(T_0) = \{0\}$.

**Example 2.1.7.** Let $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be the linear transformation defined by

$$T(a_1, a_2, a_3) = (a_1 - a_2, 2a_3).$$

One can verify that

$$N(T) = \{(a, a, 0) : a \in \mathbb{R}\} \text{ and } R(T) = \mathbb{R}^2.$$

**Theorem 2.1.1** (The Null and Range are Both Subspaces). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces and $T : V \to W$ be linear. Then $N(T)$ and $R(T)$ are subspaces of $V$ and $W$, respectively.

**Proof.** Let $T : V \to W$ be linear. First, we show that $N(T)$ is a subspace of $V$.

(a) Note that $0_V \in V$ implies that $T(0_V) = 0_W$ since $T$ is linear (property (1) of linearity). Hence, $0_V \in N(T)$.

(b) Let $x, y \in N(T)$. By definition, of the null space we have $T(x) = 0_W$ and $T(y) = 0_W$. Since $T$ is linear, we get that

$$T(x + y) = T(x) + T(y) = 0_W + 0_W = 0_W \Rightarrow x + y \in N(T).$$

Hence, $N(T)$ is closed under addition.

(c) Let $x \in N(T)$ and let $c \in F$. Then

$$T(cx) = cT(x) = c0_V = 0_W \Rightarrow cx \in N(T).$$

Hence, Theorem 1.3 tells us that $N(T)$ is a subspace of $V$. Now, we will show that $R(T)$ is a subspace of $W$.

(a) Note that $0_V \in V$ implies that $T(0_V) = 0_W \in R(T)$ by property (1) of linearity. So, $0_W \in R(T)$.

(b) Now let $x, y \in R(T)$. Then there exists elements $z, w \in W$ such that $T(x) = z$ and $T(y) = w$. Then by linearity, we have $T(x + y) = T(x) + T(y) = z + y \in W$. Hence, we must have $x + y \in R(T)$ and thus $R(T)$ is closed under addition.

(c) Let $x \in R(T)$ and $c \in F$. Then we have $T(cx) = cT(x) \in W$ since $T(x) \in W$. Hence, $cx \in R(T)$.

Thus, Theorem 1.3 also tells us that $R(T)$ is a subspace of $W$. ■

The next theorem allows us to find a spanning set for the range of a linear transformation.

**Theorem 2.1.2** (Spanning Set for a Linear Transformation). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear. If $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots v_n\}$ is a basis for $V$, then

$$R(T) = \text{span}(T(\beta)) = \text{span}(\{T(v_1), T(v_2), \ldots, T(v_n)\}).$$

**Proof.** Let $T : V \to W$ be linear where $V$ and $W$ are vector spaces. To show that $T(\beta)$ generates $R(T)$; we need to show that

$$\text{span}(T(\beta)) \subseteq R(T) \text{ and } R(T) \subseteq \text{span}(T(\beta)).$$

Observe that $T(v_i) \in R(T)$ for all $i$. Hence, $T(\beta) \subseteq R(T)$. By theorem 1.5, we know that $R(T)$ also contains the span of $T(\beta)$. Hence, $\text{span}(T(\beta)) \subseteq R(T)$.

Let $w \in R(T)$. Then for some $v \in W$, we have $T(v) = w$. Since $\beta$ is a basis for $V$, we choose scalars $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n$ such that

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i v_i.$$

Since $T$ is linear, we have that

$$w = T(v) = T\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i v_i\Big) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i T(v_i).$$

This tells us that $v \in \text{span}(T(\beta))$. Hence, $T(\beta)$ generates $R(T)$. ∎

**Example 2.1.8.** Define the linear transformation $T : P_2(\mathbb{R}) \to M_{2\times 2}(\mathbb{R})$ by

$$T(f(x)) = \begin{pmatrix} f(1) - f(2) & 0 \\ 0 & f(0) \end{pmatrix}.$$

Note that

$$\beta = \{1, x, x^2\} \text{ is a basis for } P_2(\mathbb{R}) \text{ and } T(\beta) = \{T(1), T(x), T(x^2)\}.$$

Then observe that

$$R(T) = \text{span}(T(\beta))$$
$$= \text{span}\Big(\Big\{ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Big\}\Big).$$

This tells us that $R(T)$ contains the basis found in the second equality above. Hence, we must have $\dim(R(T)) = 2$.

**Example 2.1.9.** Let $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be the linear transformation defined by

$$T(a_1, a_2, a_3) = (a_1 - a_2, 2a_3).$$

One can show that

$$N(T) = \{(a, a, 0)\} : a \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } R(T) = \mathbb{R}^2.$$

Just like how the 'size' of a given subspace is denoted by its dimension, we can also determine the size of a null spaces and ranges. However, we will attach some special names associated with these sets.

**Definition 2.1.6** (Nullity). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear. If $N(T)$ is finite-dimensional, then we define **nullity** of $T$ by nullity$(T)$ to be the dimension of $N(T)$.

**Definition 2.1.7** (Rank). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$. If $R(T)$ is finite-dimensional, then we denote the **rank** of $T$ by rank$(T)$ to be the dimension of $R(T)$.

From these definitions, we can intuit the following relationships between Nullity and Rank of a linear transformation:

- The larger the nullity, the smaller the rank of a linear transformation.

- the larger the rank, the smaller the nullity.

This relationship between the two spaces is encompassed in the next theorem.

### 2.1.4   Dimension Theorem

**Theorem 2.1.3** (Dimension Theorem). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear. If $V$ is finite-dimensional, then

$$\text{nullity}(T) + \text{rank}(T) = \dim(V).$$

**Proof.** Suppose $\dim(V) = n$ and $\dim(N(T)) = k$, and $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_k\}$ is a basis for $N(T)$. By corollary to Theorem 1.11 $\beta$ can be extended to be a basis for $V$. Denote this basis as

$$\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n\}.$$

We claim that that $S = \{T(u_{k+1}), T(u_{k+2}), \ldots, T(u_n)\}$ is a basis for $R(T)$. First, we show that $S$ generates $R(T)$. Using The Theorem 2.1 and the fact that $T(u_i) = 0$ for $1 \leq i \leq k$, we get that

$$
\begin{aligned}
R(T) &= \text{span}(\{T(u_1), T(u_2), \ldots, T(u_n)\}) \\
&= \text{span}(\{T(u_{k+1}), T(u_{k+2}), \ldots, T(u_n)\}) \\
&= \text{span}(T(S)).
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $S$ generates $R(T)$.

Now, we want to show that $S$ is linearly independent. Then choose scalars $\alpha_{k+1}, \alpha_{k+2}, \ldots, \alpha_n$ such that

$$\sum_{i=k+1}^{n} \alpha_i T(u_i) = 0. \tag{1}$$

Since $T$ is linear, we can re-write (1) into the following form

$$T\left(\sum_{i=k+1}^{n} \alpha_i u_i\right) = 0.$$

Hence, we find that

$$\sum_{i=k+1}^{n} \alpha_i u_i \in N(T). \tag{2}$$

Since $N(T)$ contains $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_k\}$ as a basis, we can express (2) as a linear combination of vectors in this set. Hence, we have

$$\sum_{i=k+1}^{n} \alpha_i u_i = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \beta_i u_i \tag{3}$$

for some scalars $\beta_1, \beta_2, \ldots, \beta_k$. Now, we have

$$\sum_{i=k+1}^{n} \alpha_i u_i - \sum_{i=1}^{k} \beta_i u_i = 0.$$

Since $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n\}$ is linearly independent, we find that both $\alpha_i$'s and $\beta_i$'s are all zero. Hence, $S$ is also linearly independent. Thus, $S$ is a basis for $R(T)$ and that $\text{rank}(T) = n - k$ and so we get our desired result

$$\dim(V) = \text{rank}(T) + \text{nullity}(T).$$

■

Applying the dimension theorem to example 9 allows us to conclude that $\text{nullity}(T) + 2 = 3$ implies $\text{nullity}(T) = 1$.

Before we move on, let us recall two key definitions needed for the next topic.

**Definition 2.1.8** (Injective Functions). Let $f : A \to B$ and $x, y \in A$. We call $f$ **one-to-one** if $f(x) = f(y)$ implies $x = y$ or, equivalently, if $x \neq y$ implies $f(x) \neq f(y)$ (this latter part is the contrapositive of the definition).

**Definition 2.1.9** (Surjective Functions). Let $f : A \to B$. We call $f$ **onto** if $f(A) = B$; that is, for any $y \in B$, there exists an $x \in A$ such that $f(x) = y$.

As we will see, these two definitions will give insights into the nullity and rank of linear transformations.

**Theorem 2.1.4** (Injectivity $\Leftrightarrow$ Null Space is $\{0\}$). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear. Then $T$ is **one-to-one** if and only if $N(T) = \{0\}$.

**Proof.** ($\Rightarrow$) Suppose $T$ is injective. Let $x \in V$ be arbitrary. Then $T(x) = T(0_V)$ implies $x = 0_V$. This tells us that $N(T) = \{0\}$. ($\Leftarrow$) Conversely, let $N(T) = \{0\}$. Let $x, y \in V$ be arbitrary and assume $T(x) = T(y)$. By using linearity, we have

$$T(x) = T(y) \Leftrightarrow T(x) - T(y) = 0_W$$
$$\Leftrightarrow T(x - y) = 0_W$$

Since $x - y \in N(T)$ and $N(T) = \{0\}$, we have $x - y = 0$ if and only if $x = y$. Hence, $T$ is an injective transformation. ■

Referring back to example 9, we find that $\text{nullity}(T) = 1$ implies that example 9 is not injective.

**Theorem 2.1.5** (Equal Finite Dimensions Between Vector Spaces). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces of equal (finite) dimension, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear. Then the following are equivalent.

(a) $T$ is injective.

(b) $T$ is surjective.

(c) $\text{rank}(T) = \dim(V)$.

**Proof.** Using the dimension theorem, we have

$$\text{nullity}(T) + \text{rank}(T) = \dim(V).$$

By theorem 2.5, We know that $T$ is injective if and only if $N(T) = \{0\}$. By definition, we have nullity$(T) = 0$. By the dimension theorem, this is true if and only if

$$\text{rank}(T) = \dim(V) \Leftrightarrow \text{rank}(T) = \dim(W)$$

where $V$ and $W$ have equal dimensions. This is true if and only if $\dim(R(T)) = \dim(W)$. This is true if and only if $R(T) = W$ by theorem 1.11. By definition, we know that $T$ is surjective. ∎

**Remark.** If $V$ is not finite-dimensional then we find that neither (a) nor (b) follows from each other.

**Example 2.1.10.** Let $T : P_2(\mathbb{R}) \to P_3(\mathbb{R})$ be the linear transformation defined by

$$T(f(x)) = 2f'(x) + \int_0^x 3f(t) \, dt.$$

Observe that

$$R(T) = \text{span}(T(1), T(x), T(x^2)) = \text{span}(\{3x, 2 + \tfrac{3}{2}x^2, 4x + x^3\}).$$

One can show that the set $\{3x, 2 + \tfrac{3}{2}x^2, 4x + x^3\}$ is linearly independent and that rank$(T) = 3$. Since rank$(T) \neq \dim(P_3(\mathbb{R}))$, we have that $T$ is not surjective. Since $\dim(P_2(\mathbb{R})) = 3$, we know that

$$\text{rank}(T) = \dim(P_2(\mathbb{R}))$$

by the Dimension Theorem. Thus, nullity$(T) = \{0\}$ and hence $T$ is injective.

**Example 2.1.11.** Let $T : F^2 \to F^2$ be the linear transformation defined by

$$T(a_1, a_2) = (a_1 + a_2, a_1).$$

One can show that $T$ is injective so that $N(T) = \{0\}$. The dimension theorem tells us that $T$ must also be onto.

**Example 2.1.12.** Let $T : P_2(\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbb{R}^3$ be the linear transformation defined by

$$T(a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2) = (a_0, a_1, a_2).$$

One can easily show that $T$ is linear and one-to-one. We find that $S = \{2 - x + 3x^2, x + x^2, 1 - 2x^2\}$ is linearly independent in $P_2(\mathbb{R})$ since

$$T(S) = \{(2, -1, 3), (0, 1, 1), (1, 0, -2)\}$$

is linearly independent in $\mathbb{R}^3$.

**Theorem 2.1.6** (Unique Linear Transformations). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces over $F$, and suppose that $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is a basis for $V$. For $w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n \in W$, there exists exactly one linear transformation $T : V \to W$ such that $T(v_i) = w_i$ for all $1 \le i \le n$.

**Proof.** Let $x \in V$. Since $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is a basis for $V$, we have

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i v_i$$

for some scalars $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_n$. Define the map $T : V \to W$ by

$$T(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i w_i$$

or $w_i \in W$ and $x \in V$.

First, we show that $T$ is linear. Let $x, y \in V$. Then

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i v_i$$

and

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \delta_i v_i$$

for some scalars $\gamma_i$ and $\delta_i$ for all $1 \le i \le n$. Then by definition of $T$, we get that

$$T(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i w_i$$

and

$$T(y) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \delta_i w_i.$$

By definition of $T$, we get that

$$T(x + y) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} (\gamma_i + \delta_i) w_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i w_i + \sum_{i=1}^{n} \delta_i w_i = T(x) + T(y).$$

Hence, the first property of linearity holds. For the second property, let $c \in F$ and observe that

$$T(cx) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i (c w_i) = c \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i w_i = cT(x).$$

Hence, the second property of linearity holds. We conclude that $T$ is linear and that $T(u_i) = w_i$ for all $1 \le i \le n$.

Now suppose there exists another linear map $U : V \to W$ such that $U(v_i) = w_i$ for all $1 \le i \le n$ defined by.

$$U(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i U(v_i).$$

Then observe that

$$U(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i U(v_i) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_i w_i = T(x).$$

Thus, $U = T$ for all $x \in V$ and so, we conclude that $T$ is a unique linear map. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and suppose that $V$ has a finite basis $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$. If $U, T : V \to W$ are linear and $U(v_i) = T(v_i)$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$, then $U = T$.

**Example 2.1.13.** Let $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be the linear transformation defined by

$$T(a_1, a_2) = (2a_2 - a_1, 3a_1)$$

and suppose that $U : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ is linear. Let $\{(1, 2), (1, 1)\}$ be a basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$. If $U(1, 2) = (3, 3)$ and $U(1, 1) = (1, 3)$, then we find that $U(x_i) = T(x_i)$ $i = 1, 2$. Thus $U = T$ from the corollary to theorem 2.6.

## 2.2   The Matrix Representation of a Linear Transformation

In this section, we will develop a one-to-one correspondence between matrices and linear transformations so that we may study the properties of one utilizing the properties of another. Before we do this, we shall develop the concept of an *ordered basis* for a vector space $V$.

### 2.2.1   Ordered Bases

**Definition 2.2.1** (Ordered Bases). Let $V$ be a finite-dimensional vector space. An **ordered basis** for $V$ is a basis for $V$ endowed with a specific order; that is, an ordered basis for $V$ is a finite sequence of linearly independent vectors in $V$ that generates $V$.

**Example 2.2.1.** In $F^3$, let $\beta = \{e_1, e_2, e_3\}$ be an ordered basis for $F^3$. If we take another set, say, $\gamma = \{e_2, e_1, e_3\}$, be a basis for $F^3$, we will see that even though these two bases are equal in terms of the vectors within it, we still end up with different ORDERED bases.

- Note that $e_i$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$ are the **standard basis vectors** for $F^n$. The set $\{e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_n\}$ in $F^n$ is the **standard ordered basis** for $F^n$. Likewise, $\{1, x, \ldots, x^n\}$ is the **standard ordered basis** for $P_n(F)$.

- We can now identify vectors in some finite-dimensional vector space of dimension $n$ by using $n-$tuples.

- This is done through what is called *coordinate vectors*.

**Definition 2.2.2** (Coordinate Vectors). Let $\beta = \{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n\}$ be an ordered basis for a finite-dimensional vector space $V$. For $x \in V$, let $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ be the unique scalars such that

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i u_i.$$

We define the **coordinate vector of $x$ relative to** $\beta$, denoted $[x]_\beta$, by

$$[x]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}.$$

- In our definition of standard basis vectors, we see that $[u_i]_\beta = e_i$.

- It is quite easy to show that $x \to [x]_\beta$ provides us with a linear transformation from $T : V \to F^n$.

**Example 2.2.2.** Let $V = P_2(\mathbb{R})$ and let $\beta = \{1, x, x^2\}$ be the standard ordered basis for $V$. If $f(x) = 4 + 6x - 7x^2$, then

$$[f]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 6 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Suppose that $V$ and $W$ are finite-dimensional vector spaces with ordered bases $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ and $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_m\}$, respectively. Let $T : V \to W$ be linear. Then for each $j$, $1 \le j \le n$, there exists unique scalars (Theorem 1.5.1) $a_{ij} \in F$, $1 \le i \le m$ such that

$$T(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^{m} a_{ij} w_i \quad \text{for} \quad 1 \le j \le n.$$

## 2.2.2 Matrix Representations

**Definition 2.2.3** (Matrix Representation of $T$)**.** Using the notation above, we call the $m \times n$ matrix $A$ defined by $A_{ij} = a_{ij}$, the **matrix representation of $T$ in the ordered bases** $\beta$ **and** $\gamma$ and write $A = [T]_\beta^\gamma$. If $V = W$ and $\beta = \gamma$, then we write $A = [T]_\beta$.

- The $j$th column of $A$ is just $[T(v_j)]_\gamma$.

- If $U : V \to W$ is linear such that $[U]_\beta^\gamma = [T]_\beta^\gamma$, then $U = T$ by corollary to Theorem 2.6..

## 2.2.3 Examples of Computing Matrix Representations

**Example 2.2.3.** Let $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^3$ be the linear transformation defined by

$$T(a_1, a_2) = (a_1 + 3a_2, 0, 2a_1 - 4a_2)$$

Let $\beta$ and $\gamma$ be the standard ordered bases for $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$, respectively. Now,

$$T(1, 0) = (1, 0, 2) = 1e_1 + 0e_2 + 2e_3$$

and

$$T(0, 1) = (3, 0, -4) = 3e_1 + 0e_2 - 4e_3.$$

Hence, we have

$$[T]_\beta^\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 2 & -4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Suppose we re-ordered our basis $\gamma$ to be the basis $\gamma' = \{e_3, e_2, e_1\}$. Then we will see that

$$[T]_\beta^{\gamma'} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -4 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The example serves to demonstrate how different orderings of bases can lead to different matrix representations.

**Example 2.2.4.** Let $T : P_3(\mathbb{R}) \to P_2(\mathbb{R})$ be the linear transformation defined by $T(f(x)) = f'(x)$. Let $\beta$ and $\gamma$ be the standard ordered bases for $P_3(\mathbb{R})$ and $P_2(\mathbb{R})$, respectively. Since $\beta = \{1, x, x^2, x^3\}$ is a basis for $P_3(\mathbb{R})$ and $\gamma = \{1, x, x^2\}$ for $P_2(\mathbb{R})$ , observe that

$$T(1) = 0 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot x^2$$
$$T(x) = 1 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot x^2$$
$$T(x^2) = 0 \cdot 1 + 2 \cdot x + 0 \cdot x^2$$
$$T(x^3) = 0 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot x + 2 \cdot x^2.$$

So,

$$[T]_\beta^\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Observe that writing $T(x^j)$ is written as a linear combination of the vectors of $\gamma$, its coefficients give the entries of the $j$th column of $[T]_\beta^\gamma$.

Later on, we will prove a theorem about how associating matrices with linear transformations leads to preservation of addition and scalar multiplication.

### 2.2.4 Addition and Scalar Multiplication of Matrix Representations

**Definition 2.2.4.** Let $T, U : V \to W$ be arbitrary functions, where $V$ and $W$ are vector spaces over $F$, and let $a \in F$. We define $T + U : V \to W$ by $(T + U)(x) = T(x) + U(x)$ for all $x \in V$, and $aT : V \to W$ by $(aT)(x) = aT(x)$ for all $x \in V$.

These operations of addition and scalar multiplication lead to the preservation of linear transformations.

**Theorem 2.2.1** (The Set of Linear Maps Over $V$ is a Vector Space). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces over a field $F$, and let $T, U : V \to W$ be linear. Then we have

(a) For all $a \in F$, $aT + U$ is linear.

(b) Using the operations of addition and scalar multiplication in the preceding definition, the collection of all linear transformations from $V$ to $W$ is a vector space over $F$.

**Proof.** (a) To show linearity of $aT + U$, let $x, y \in V$ and $a \in F$. Then the linearity of $T$

and $U$ implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
(aT + U)(x + y) &= (aT)(x + y) + U(x + y) \\
&= (aT)(x) + (aT)(y) + U(x) + U(y) \\
&= (aT)(x) + U(x) + (aT)(y) + U(y) \\
&= (aT + U)(x) + (aT + U)(y).
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $c \in F$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
(c(aT + U))(x) &= (caT + cU)(x) \\
&= (caT)(x) + (cU)(x) \\
&= c((aT)(x) + cU(x) \\
&= c((aT)(x) + U(x)) \\
&= c(aT + U)(x).
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, we can see that $T$ is linear.

(b) Let $S$ denote the collection of all linear transformations from $V$ to $W$. Note that the zero transformation $T_0$ is in $S$. The vector axioms follow from $S$ being closed under addition and scalar multiplication; that is,

$$
U + T \in S \text{ and } cT \in S.
$$

Hence, $S$ is a vector space over a field $F$. $\blacksquare$

---

**Definition 2.2.5.** Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces over $F$. We denote the vector space of all linear transformations from $V$ into $W$ by $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$. In the case that $V = W$, we write $\mathcal{L}(V)$ instead of $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$.

---

**Theorem 2.2.2** (Addition and Scalar Mulitplication of Matrix Representations). Let $V$ and $W$ be finite-dimensional vector spaces with ordered bases $\beta$ and $\gamma$, respectively, and let $T, U : V \to W$ be linear transformations. Then

(a) $[T + U]_\beta^\gamma = [T]_\beta^\gamma + [U]_\beta^\gamma$ and

(b) $[aT]_\beta^\gamma = a[T]_\beta^\gamma$ for all scalars $a$.

**Proof.** (a) Let $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m\}$ and $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n\}$. There exists unique scalars $a_{ij}$ and $b_{ij}$ with $1 \le i \le m$ and $1 \le j \le n$ such that

$$
T(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^{m} a_{ij} w_i \text{ and } U(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{ij} w_i \text{ for } 1 \le j \le n.
$$

Observe that

$$(T + U)(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}(a_{ij} + b_{ij})w_i$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{m} a_{ij}w_i + \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{ij}w_i$$

$$= T(v_j) + U(v_j).$$

Hence, we can write that

$$\left([T + U]_\beta^\gamma\right)_{ij} = a_{ij} + b_{ij} = \left([T]_\beta^\gamma + [U]_\beta^\gamma\right)_{ij}$$

(b) Using the same bases as above, the matrix representation of $[aT]_\beta^\gamma$ is written as

$$(aT)(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^{n}(ca_{ij})w_i = c\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ij}w_i = cT(v_j) \quad \text{for} \ \ 1 \leq j \leq n.$$

Hence, we can write

$$([aT]_\beta^\gamma)_{ij} = a([T]_\beta^\gamma)_{ij}.$$

∎

**Example 2.2.5.** Let $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^3$ and $U : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^3$ be the linear transformations respectively defined by

$$T(a_1, a_2) = (a_1 + 3a_2, 2a_1 - 4a_2) \text{ and } U(a_1, a_2) = (a_1 - a_2, 2a_1, 3a_1 + 2a_2).$$

Let $\beta$ and $\gamma$ be the standard ordered bases of $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$, respectively. Computing $[T]_\beta^\gamma$, we get

$$[T]_\beta^\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 2 & -4 \end{pmatrix},$$

and

$$[U]_\beta^\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since $T + U$ is linear, we can write

$$(T + U)(a_1, a_2) = (2a_1 + 2a_2, 2a_1, 5a_1 - 2a_2)$$

and so we can write

$$[T + U]_\beta^\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 \\ 5 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

using Theorem 2.8.

## 2.3 Composition of Linear Transformations and Matrix Multiplication

### 2.3.1 Compositions

In the last section, we learned that

- Linear Transformations as well as their operations such as sums and scalar multiplications can represented in terms of matrices.

- The set of all linear transformations from $V$ to $W$ forms a vector space over some field $F$.

The main goal in this section is to describe how to represent the multiplication of two linear transformations and thus the multiplication of two matrices. The notation $UT$ is used in replacement of $U \circ T$ for the composite of linear transformations of $U$ and $T$.

Our first goal is to prove that the composite of linear transformations is linear.

**Theorem 2.3.1** (Compositions are Linear). Let $V, W$, and $Z$ be vector spaces over the same field $F$, and let $T : V \to W$ and $U : W \to Z$ be linear. Then $UT : V \to Z$ is linear.

**Proof.** Suppose $T : V \to W$ and $U : W \to Z$ are linear. Let $cx + y \in V$. Note that $T(cx + y) \in W$ and $U(T(cx + y)) \in Z$. So,

$$
\begin{aligned}
(UT)(cx + y) &= U(T(cx + y)) & \text{(Definition of Composition)} \\
&= U(cT(x) + T(y)) & (T \text{ linear}) \\
&= cU(T(x)) + U(T(y)) & (U \text{ linear}) \\
&= c(UT)(x) + (UT)(y).
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $UT$ is linear. ∎

The following are a list of properties of the composition of linear transformations.

**Theorem 2.3.2** (Properties of Compositions in $\mathcal{L}(V)$). Let $V$ be a vector space. Let $T, U_1, U_2 \in \mathcal{L}(V)$. Then

(a) $T(U_1 + U_2) = TU_1 + TU_2$ and $(U_1 + U_2)T = U_1T + U_2T$.

(b) $T(U_1U_2) = (TU_1)U_2$.

(c) $TI = IT = T$.

(d) $a(U_1U_2) = (aU_1)U_2 = U_1(aU_2)$ for all scalars $a$.

**Proof.** Let $T, U_1, U_2 \in \mathcal{V}$ with vector space $V$.

(a) Then for $x \in V$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
T(U_1 + U_2)(x) &= T\Big((U_1 + U_2)(x)\Big) & \text{(Def of Composition)} \\
&= T\Big(U_1(x) + U_2(x)\Big) & (\mathcal{L}(V) \text{ V.S}) \\
&= T\Big(U_1(x)\Big) + T\Big(U_2(x)\Big) & (T \text{ is linear}) \\
&= (TU_1)(x) + (TU_2)(x) & \text{(Def of Composition)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $T(U_1 + U_2) = TU_1 + TU_2$.

Let $x \in V$ again. Then

$$\Big((U_1 + U_2)T\Big)(x) = (U_1 + U_2)(T(x)) \qquad \text{(Def of Composition)}$$
$$= U_1(T(x)) + U_2(T(x)) \qquad (\mathcal{L}(V) \text{ V.S})$$
$$= (U_1T)(x) + (U_2T)(x). \qquad \text{(Def of Composition)}$$

Hence, $(U_1 + U_2)T = (U_1T) + U_2T$.

(b) Let $x \in V$. Then using the definition of composition, we have

$$T(U_1U_2)(x) = T\Big((U_1U_2)(x)\Big)$$
$$= T\Big(U_1(U_2(x))\Big)$$
$$= (TU_1)(U_2(x))$$
$$= (TU_1)U_2(x).$$

Hence, $T(U_1U_2) = TU_1$.

(c) Let $x \in V$. Using the definition of composition, we get

$$(TI)(x) = T(I(x)) = T(x) = I(T(x)) = (IT)(x).$$

Hence, $TI = IT = T$.

(d) Let $a \in F$ and $v \in V$. Then using the definition of composition and operations of $\mathcal{L}(V)$, we must have

$$a(U_1U_2)(x) = aU_1(U_2(x))$$
$$= (aU_1)(U_2(x))$$
$$= (U_1a)(U_2(x))$$
$$= U_1(aU_2(x))$$
$$= U_1(aU_2)(x).$$

Hence, we have $a(U_1U_2) = U_1(aU_2)$.

$\blacksquare$

We can also prove a more general result when $T : V \to W$ where $\dim(V) \neq \dim(W)$.

### 2.3.2   Matrix Products

**Definition 2.3.1** (Matrix Representation of the Composition). Let $T : V \to W$ and $U : W \to Z$ be linear transformations and let $A = [U]_\beta^\gamma$ and $B = [T]_\alpha^\beta$ where $\alpha = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}, \beta = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_m\}$, and $\gamma = \{z_1, z_2, \ldots, z_p\}$ are ordered bases for $V, W$ and $Z$, respectively. Define the product $AB$ of two matrices so that $AB = [UT]_\alpha^\gamma$.

### 2.3.3 Summation Formula for Matrix Representation of Composition

For $1 \leq j \leq n$, we have

$$(UT)(v_j) = U(T(v_j)) \qquad \text{(Definition of Composition)}$$

$$= U\Big(\sum_{k=1}^{m} B_{kj} w_k\Big) \qquad ([T]_\alpha^\beta \text{ for } 1 \leq j \leq n)$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{m} B_{kj} U(w_k) \qquad \text{(Linearity of } U)$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{m} B_{kj}\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{p} A_{ik} z_i\Big) \qquad ([U]_\beta^\gamma \text{ for } 1 \leq k \leq m)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{p}\Big(\sum_{k=1}^{m} A_{ik} B_{kj}\Big) z_i \qquad \text{(Finite Sums are Interchangeable)}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{p} C_{ij} z_i$$

where

$$C_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{m} A_{ik} B_{kj}.$$

**Definition 2.3.2** (Product of Two Matrices). Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix and $B$ be an $n \times p$ matrix. We define the **product** of $A$ and $B$, denoted $AB$, to be the $m \times p$ matrix such that

$$(AB)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{ik} B_{kj} \quad \text{for} \ \ 1 \leq i \leq m, \ 1 \leq j \leq p$$

- In order for the product $AB$ to be defined, where $A$ is an $m \times n$ matrix and $B$ is a $n \times p$, the two inner dimensions must be equal (in this case $n$).

- Subsequently, the two outer dimensions (namely, $m$ and $p$) determine the size of the resulting matrix.

**Example 2.3.1.** We have

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \cdot 4 + 2 \cdot 2 + 1 \cdot 5 \\ 0 \cdot 4 + 4 \cdot 2 + (-1) \cdot 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 13 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Notice how the number of columns of the first matrix matches the number of rows on the second.

Matrix multiplication is not commutative; that is, it is not always the case that $AB = BA$. If $A$ and $B$ have corresponding inner dimensions; that is, if $A$ is an $m \times n$ matrix and $B$ is an $n \times p$ matrix, then $(AB)^t = B^t A^t$ since

$$(AB)_{ij}^t = (AB)_{ji} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{jk} B_{ki}$$

and

$$(B^t A^t)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} (B^t)_{ik}(A)^t_{kj} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} B_{ki} A_{jk}.$$

**Theorem 2.3.3** (Compositions Represented by Product of Matrix Multiplication)**.** Let $V, W,$ and $Z$ be finite-dimensional vector spaces with ordered bases $\alpha, \beta,$ and $\gamma$ respectively. Let $T : V \to W$ and $U : W \to Z$ be linear transformations. Then

$$[UT]^\gamma_\alpha = [U]^\gamma_\beta [T]^\beta_\alpha.$$

**Proof.** This fact follows immediately from our definition of matrix products. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $V$ be a finite-dimensional vector space with an ordered basis $\beta$. Let $T, U \in \mathcal{L}(V)$. Then $[UT]_\beta = [U]_\beta [T]_\beta$.

**Example 2.3.2.** Let $U : P_3(\mathbb{R}) \to P_2(\mathbb{R})$ and $T : P_2(\mathbb{R}) \to P_3(\mathbb{R})$ be the linear transformations respectively defined by

$$U(f(x)) = f'(x) \quad \text{and} \quad T(f(x)) = \int_0^x f(t) \, dt.$$

Let $\alpha$ and $\beta$ be the standard ordered bases of $P_3(\mathbb{R})$ and $P_2(\mathbb{R})$, respectively. We claim that $UT = I$. To see why this is the case, observe that

$$[UT]_\beta = [U]^\beta_\alpha [T]^\alpha_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = [I]_\beta.$$

**Definition 2.3.3** (Kronecker Delta)**.** We define the **Kronecker delta** $\delta_{ij}$ by $\delta_{ij} = 1$ if $i = j$ and $\delta_{ij} = 0$ if $i \neq j$.

**Definition 2.3.4** (Identity Matrix)**.** The $n \times n$ **identity matrix** $I_n$ is defined by $(I_n)_{ij} = \delta_{ij}$.

In other words, the identity matrix is made up of the Kronecker delta constants where entries along the diagonal are equal to 1 and 0 otherwise.

**Theorem 2.3.4** (Properties of Matrices)**.** Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix, $B$ and $C$ be $n \times p$ matrices, and $D$ and $E$ be $q \times m$ matrices. Then

(a) $A(B + C) = AB + AC$ and $(D + E)A = DA + EA$.

(b) $a(AB) = (aA)B = A(aB)$ for any scalar $a$.

(c) $I_m A = A = A I_n$.

(d) If $V$ is an $n-$dimensional vector space with an ordered basis $\beta$, then $[I_V]_\beta = I_n$.

**Proof.** Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix, $B$ and $C$ be $n \times p$ matrices, and $D$ and $E$ be $q \times m$

matrices. Then

(a) Let $1 \leq i \leq m$ and $1 \leq j \leq p$. By definition of the product of two matrices, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
(A(B+C))_{ij} &= \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{ik}(B+C)_{kj} \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{ik}(B_{kj} + C_{kj}) \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{ik}B_{kj} + \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{ik}C_{kj} \\
&= (AB)_{ij} + (AC)_{ij}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $A(B+C) = AB + AC$.

Now, let $1 \leq i \leq q$ and $1 \leq j \leq n$. For the second formula, we can use the same definition to write

$$
\begin{aligned}
((D+E)A)_{ij} &= \sum_{k=1}^{m} (D+E)_{ik} A_{kj} \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{m} (D_{ik} + E_{ik}) A_{kj} \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{m} D_{ik} A_{kj} + \sum_{i=1}^{m} E_{ik} A_{kj} \\
&= (DA)_{ij} + (EA)_{ij}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $(D+E)A = DA + EA$.

(b) Let $1 \leq i \leq m$ and $1 \leq j \leq p$. Let $a \in F$. Then using the definition of the product once again, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
a(AB)_{ij} &= a \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{ik}B_{kj} \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{n} a(A_{ik}B_{kj}) \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{n} (aA_{ik})B_{kj} \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{n} (aA)_{ik}B_{kj} \\
&= ((aA)B)_{ij}.
\end{aligned}
$$

CHAPTER 2.  LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS AND MATRICES

Then observe that

$$((aA)B)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{n}(aA_{ik})B_{kj}$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{n}(A_{ik}a)B_{kj}$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{n}A_{ik}(aB_{kj})$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{n}A_{ik}(aB)_{kj}$$

$$= (A(aB))_{ij}.$$

Hence, $(aA)B = A(aB)$. Thus, we conclude that

$$a(AB) = (aA)B = A(aB).$$

(c) Let $1 \le i \le m$ and $1 \le j \le n$. Since $\delta_{ik} = 1$ only when $i = k$ and 0 otherwise, we must have

$$(I_mA)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{m}\delta_{ik}A_{kj} = A_{ij}.$$

Likewise,

$$(AI_n)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{n}A_{ik}\delta_{kj} = A_{ij}$$

by the same reasoning. Hence, we have

$$I_mA = A = AI_n.$$

(d) Let $V$ be an $n-$dimensional vector space with $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ as an ordered basis. Since $I_V(v_j) = v_j$ for all $1 \le j \le n$, we must have

$$v_j = I_V(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{ij}v_i$$

which holds only if $a_{ij} = 1$ for all $i = j$ and 0 otherwise. But this means that $a_{ij} = \delta_{ij}$, so $[I_V]_\beta = I_n$.

∎

**Corollary.** Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix, $B_1, B_2, \ldots, B_k$ be $n \times p$ matrices, $C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_k$ be $q \times m$ matrices, and $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k$ be scalars. Then

$$A\left(\sum_{i=1}^{k}a_iB_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^{k}a_iAB_i$$

and

$$\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i C_i\Big) A = \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i C_i A.$$

**Proof.** Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix and $B_1, B_2, \ldots, B_k$ be $n \times p$ matrices. Let $1 \leq \ell \leq m$ and $1 \leq s \leq p$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\Big[A\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i B_i\Big)\Big]_{\ell s} &= \sum_{\lambda=1}^{n} A_{\ell\lambda}\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i B_i\Big)_{\lambda s} \\
&= \sum_{\lambda=1}^{n} A_{\ell\lambda}\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} (a_i B_i)_{\lambda s}\Big) \\
&= \sum_{\lambda=1}^{n} A_{\ell\lambda}\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i (B_i)_{\lambda s}\Big) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i \Big(\sum_{\lambda=1}^{n} A_{\ell\lambda}(B_i)_{\lambda s}\Big) \qquad \text{(part (a) of Theorem 2.12)} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i (AB_i)_{\ell s}.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$A\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i B_i\Big) = \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i AB_i.$$

To show the second formula, let $1 \leq \ell \leq q$ and $1 \leq s \leq n$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\Big[\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i C_i\Big) A\Big]_{\ell s} &= \sum_{\lambda=1}^{n} \Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i C_i\Big)_{\ell\lambda} A_{\lambda s} \\
&= \sum_{\lambda=1}^{n} \Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} (a_i C_i)_{\ell\lambda}\Big) A_{\lambda s} \\
&= \sum_{\lambda=1}^{n} \Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i (C_i)_{\ell\lambda}\Big) A_{\lambda s} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i \Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} (C_i)_{\ell\lambda} A_{\lambda s}\Big) \qquad \text{(part (a) of Theorem 2.12)} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i (C_i A)_{\ell s}.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$\Big(\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i C_i\Big) A = \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i C_i A.$$

$\blacksquare$

**Theorem 2.3.5** (Marix Products Represented by Column Vectors). Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix and $B$ be an $n \times p$ matrix. For each $j$ ($1 \leq j \leq p$) let $u_j$ and $v_j$ denote the $j$th columns of

$AB$ and $B$ respectively. Then

(a)  $u_j = Av_j$

(b)  $v_j = Be_j$, where $e_j$ is the $j$th standard vector of $F^p$.

**Proof.** Let $1 \leq j \leq p$. Then we have

$$u_j = \begin{pmatrix} (AB)_{1j} \\ (AB)_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ (AB)_{mj} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_{k=1}^n A_{1k}B_{kj} \\ \sum_{k=1}^n A_{2k}B_{kj} \\ \vdots \\ \sum_{k=1}^n A_{mk}B_{kj} \end{pmatrix} = A \begin{pmatrix} B_{1j} \\ B_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ B_{nj} \end{pmatrix} = Av_j.$$

To show the other equation, we apply part (c) of Theorem 2.12, to write

$$v_j = \begin{pmatrix} B_{1j} \\ B_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ B_{nj} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} (BI_p)_{1j} \\ (BI_p)_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ (BI_p)_{nj} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_{k=1}^n B_{1k}\delta_{kj} \\ \sum_{k=1}^n B_{2k}\delta_{kj} \\ \vdots \\ \sum_{k=1}^n B_{nk}\delta_{kj} \end{pmatrix} = B \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{1j} \\ \delta_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ \delta_{pj} \end{pmatrix} = Be_j$$

where $\delta_{1j}$ are the Kronecker delta constants. ∎

- This result gives us the ability to write columns of $AB$ (that is, the $j$th column of $AB$) as a linear combination of the columns of $A$ with the coefficients being entries of column $j$ of $B$.

- In the case for rows, the $i$th row of $AB$ can be written as a linear combination of the rows of $B$ with coefficients being entries from $i$th row in $A$.

**Theorem 2.3.6** (Linear Maps and Matrix Products)**.** Let $V$ and $W$ be finite-dimensional vector spaces having ordered bases $\beta$ and $\gamma$, respectively, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear. Then, for each $u \in V$, we have
$$[T(u)]_\gamma = [T]_\beta^\gamma [u]_\beta.$$

**Proof.** Let $\beta$ and $\gamma$ be ordered bases for $V$ and $W$ respectively. Fix $u \in V$, and define the linear transformations

$$f : F \to V \text{ by } f(a) = au \text{ and } g : F \to W \text{ by } g(a) = aT(u) \text{ for all } a \in F.$$

Let $\alpha = \{1\}$ be the standard ordered basis for $F$. Note that

$$T(u) = 1 \cdot T(u) = g(1) = g = Tf$$

since $f = f(1) = 1 \cdot u = u$. Using Theorem 2.11, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} [T(u)]_\gamma = [g(1)]_\gamma &= [g]_\alpha^\gamma \\ &= [Tf]_\alpha^\gamma \\ &= [T]_\beta^\gamma [f]_\alpha^\beta \\ &= [T]_\beta^\gamma [f(1)]_\beta \\ &= [T]_\beta^\gamma [u]_\beta. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$[T(u)]_\gamma = [T]_\beta^\gamma [u]_\beta.$$

∎

**Example 2.3.3.** Let $T : P_3(\mathbb{R}) \to P_2(\mathbb{R})$ be the linear transformation defined by

$$T(f(x)) = f'(x),$$

and let $\beta$ and $\gamma$ be the standard ordered bases for $P_3(\mathbb{R})$ and $P_2(\mathbb{R})$, respectively. Let $A = [T]_\beta^\gamma$, then we have

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

from Example 4 of Section 2.2. Utilizing Theorem 2.3.6, we can verify that

$$[T(p(x))]_\gamma = [T]_\beta^\gamma [p(x)]_\beta$$

where $p(x) \in P_3(\mathbb{R})$ is the polynomial defined by

$$p(x) = 2 - 4x + x^2 + 3x^3.$$

Hence, we have

$$[T(p(x))]_\gamma = [q(x)]_\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix},$$

and

$$[T]_\beta^\gamma [p(x)]_\beta = A[p(x)]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -4 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Definition 2.3.5** (Left Multiplication Transformation). Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix with entries from a field $F$. We denote by $L_A$ the mapping $L_A : F^n \to F^m$ defined by $L_A(x) = Ax$ (the matrix product of $A$ and $x$) for each column vector $x \in F^n$. We call $L_A$ a **left-multiplication transformation**.

**Example 2.3.4.** Let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then $A \in M_{2 \times 3}(\mathbb{R})$ and $L_A : \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{R}^2$. If

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix},$$

then

$$L_A(x) = Ax = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Remark.** It is relatively straight forward to show that $L_A$ is linear.

**Theorem 2.3.7** (Properties of Left-Multiplication Transformations). Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix with entries from $F$. Then the left-multiplication transformation $L_A : F^n \to F^m$ is linear. Furthermore, if $B$ is any other $m \times n$ matrix (with entries from $F$) and $\beta$ and $\gamma$ are the standard ordered bases for $F^n$ and $F^m$, respectively, then we have the following properties.

(a) $[L_A]_\beta^\gamma = A$.

(b) $L_A = L_B$ if and only if $A = B$.

(c) $L_{A+B} = L_A + L_B$ and $L_{aA} = aL_A$ for all $a \in F$.

(d) If $T : F^n \to F^m$ is linear, then there exists a unique $m \times n$ matrix $C$ such that $T = L_C$. In fact, $C = [T]_\beta^\gamma$.

(e) If $E$ is an $n \times p$ matrix, then $L_{AE} = L_A L_E$.

(f) If $m = n$, then $L_{I_n} = I_{F^n}$ Transformation.

**Proof.** First, we show that $L_A$ is linear. Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix and $L_A : F^n \to F^m$. Given an arbitrary $c \in F$ and $cx + y \in F^n$, we can write

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_A(cx + y) &= A(cx + y) \\
&= A(cx) + A(y) & \text{(Part (a) of Property of Matrices)} \\
&= c(A(x)) + A(y) & \text{(Part (b) of Property of Matrices)} \\
&= cL_A(x) + L_A(y).
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $L_A$ is a linear transformation. Now, let's show properties (a)-(f)

(a) Let $1 \leq j \leq n$ and $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix. Observe that

$$([L_A]_\beta^\gamma)_j = L_A(e_j) = Ae_j = u_j$$

where $u_j$ is the $j$th column of $A$. Hence, we have

$$[L_A]_\beta^\gamma = A.$$

(b) Suppose $L_A = L_B$. By part (a), we get that

$$A = [L_A]_\beta^\gamma = [L_B]_\beta^\gamma = B.$$

Conversely, suppose $A = B$. Let $x \in F^n$. Then performing left-multiplication, we have

$$L_A(x) = Ax = Bx = L_B(x).$$

Hence, we have $L_A = L_B$.

(c) Let $x \in F^n$. Using the Part (a) of Property of Matrices, we must have

$$L_{A+B}(x) = (A + B)(x) = A(x) + B(x) = L_A(x) + L_B(x).$$

Hence, $L_{A+B} = L_A + L_B$. Now, let $a \in F$. Using the same reasoning, we have

$$L_{aA}(x) = (aA)(x) = a(A(x)) = aL_A(x).$$

Hence, $L_{aA} = aL_A$.

(d) Let $c = [T]_\beta^\gamma$. Since $T : F^n \to F^m$, we see that

$$[T(x)]_\gamma = [T]_\beta^\gamma [x]_\beta$$

or

$$T(x) = C(x) = L_C(x)$$

where $x \in F^n$. Hence, $T = L_C$.

(e) Let $1 \le j \le p$. Applying Theorem 2.13 several times so we may note that $(AE)e_j$ is the $j$th column of $AE$ and that the $j$th column of $AE$ is also equal to $A(Ee_j)$; that is,

$$(AE)e_j = A(Ee_j).$$

Hence, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
L_{AE}(e_j) = (AE)e_j &= A(E(e_j)) \\
&= L_A(E(e_j)) \\
&= L_A(L_E(e_j)) \\
&= (L_A L_E)(e_j).
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have $L_{AE} = L_A L_E$.

(f) Let $1 \le j \le n$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
L_{I_n}(e_j) = I_n(e_j) &= e_j \\
&= I_{F^n}(e_j). \qquad \text{(Part (d) of Theorem 2.3.4)}
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, $L_{I_n} = I_{F^n}$.

∎

**Theorem 2.3.8** (Associativity of Left-Multiplication Transformations). Let $A, B$ and $C$ be matrices such that $A(BC)$ is defined. Then $(AB)C$ is also defined and $A(BC) = (AB)C$; that is, matrix multiplication is associative.

**Proof.** Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix, $B$ an $n \times p$ matrix, and C $p \times \ell$ matrix so $(AB)C$ be defined with dimension $m \times \ell$. So, let $L_{(AB)C} : F^\ell \to F^m$ be the left multiplication transformation. Our goal is to show that

$$L_{(AB)C} = L_{A(BC)}.$$

Using the properties of compositions and left-multiplication transformations, we write

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{(AB)C} &= (L_{AB})L_C && \text{(Def of Left-Multiplication)} \\
&= (L_A L_B)L_C && \text{(Prop of Left-Multiplication)} \\
&= L_A(L_B L_C) && \text{(Prop of Compositions)} \\
&= L_A(L_{BC}) && \text{(Prop of Left-Multiplication)} \\
&= L_{A(BC)}. && \text{(Def of Left-Multiplication)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, we conclude that $L_{(AB)C} = L_{A(BC)}$. ∎

## 2.4 Invertibility and Isomorphisms

### 2.4.1 Inverses of Linear Maps

- We will see in this section that inverses of linear maps are linear.

- Inverses of linear maps allow us to gain insight on properties of inverted matrices.

- Many of the results found in this section are applied to concept of *isomorphisms*.

**Definition 2.4.1** (Invertibility of Linear Maps). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear. A function $U : W \to V$ is said to be an **inverse** of $T$ if $TU = I_W$ and $UT = I_V$. If $T$ has an inverse, then $T$ is said to be **invertible**. As noted in Appendix $B$, if $T$ is invertible, then the inverse of $T$ is unique and is denoted by $T^{-1}$.

The following facts hold for invertible functions $T$ and $U$.

1. $(TU)^{-1} = U^{-1}T^{-1}$.

2. $(T^{-1})^{-1} = T$; in particular, $T^{-1}$ is invertible.

- We often refer to functions being invertible if and only if they are both injective and surjective. This allows us to restate Dimension Theorem when applied to two equal finite-dimensional vector spaces.

**Theorem 2.4.1** (Dimension Theorem In Terms of Invertibility). Let $T : V \to W$ be a linear transformation, where $V$ and $W$ are finite-dimensional spaces of equal dimension. Then $T$ is invertible if and only if $\text{rank}(T) = \dim(V)$.

**Example 2.4.1.** Let $T : P_1(\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be the linear transformation defined by

$$T(a + bx) = (a, a + b).$$

One can verify directly that $T^{-1} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to P_1(\mathbb{R})$ is defined by

$$T^{-1}(c, d) = c + (d - c)x$$

and that $T^{-1}$ is also linear.

**Theorem 2.4.2** (Inverses Of Linear Maps Are Linear). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$ be linear and invertible. Then $T^{-1} : W \to V$ is linear.

**Proof.** Let $y_1, y_2 \in W$ and $c \in F$. Since $T$ is surjective and injective, there exists unique vectors $x_1$ and $x_2$ such that $T(x_1) = y_1$ and $T(x_2) = y_2$. Thus, we have $x_1 = T^{-1}(y_1)$ and $x_2 = T^{-1}(y_2)$. Since $T$ is linear, we must have that

$$
\begin{aligned}
T^{-1}(cy_1 + y_2) &= T^{-1}(cT(x_1) + T(x_2)) \\
&= T^{-1}(T(cx_1) + T(x_2)) \\
&= T^{-1}(T(cx_1 + x_2)) \\
&= T^{-1}T(cx_1 + x_2) \\
&= I_V(cx_1 + x_2) \\
&= cx_1 + x_2 \\
&= cT^{-1}(y_1) + T^{-1}(y_2).
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $T^{-1}$ is a linear map. ∎

- This tells us that the notions of invertibility, injectivity, and surjectivity in Theorem 2.5 are all equivalent.

## 2.4.2 Inverse of a Matrix

**Definition 2.4.2** (Invertibility of Matrices). Let $A$ be an $n \times n$ matrix. Then $A$ is **invertible** if there exists an $n \times n$ matrix $B$ such that $AB = BA = I$.

- When $A$ is invertible, the matrix $B$ and its product $AB$ can be written in the following way:
$$
AB = BA = I.
$$

- If $C$ was another such matrix such that the above is true (replace $B$ with $C$), then we can write
$$
C = CI = C(AB) = (CA)B = IB = B.
$$

- The matrix $B$, in this case, is called the **inverse** of $A$ and is denoted by $A^{-1}$.

**Lemma 2.4.1.** Let $T$ be an invertible linear transformation from $V$ to $W$. Then $V$ is finite-dimensional if and only if $W$ is finite-dimensional. In this case, $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $V$ is finite-dimensional. Let $\beta = \{x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\}$ be a basis for $V$. By Theorem 2.2, we get that $\mathrm{span}(T(\beta)) = R(T)$. Since $T$ is invertible, we know that $T$ is also surjective. Hence, $\mathrm{span}(T(\beta)) = R(T) = W$ and so $W$ is finite-dimensional by Theorem 1.9. Conversely, suppose that $W$ is finite-dimensional. So, let $\gamma = \{y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n\}$ be a basis for $W$. Since $T$ is surjective, we know that for each $y_i$ in $\gamma$ that $y_i = T(x_i)$ for each $i$. Hence, we have that $T^{-1}(y_i) = x_i$ for all $i$. By Theorem 2.2 again, we know that $T^{-1}(\gamma)$ spans $R(T^{-1})$ where $R(T^{-1}) = V$ since $T^{-1}$ is surjective. Hence, $V$ is finite-dimensional.

Now, suppose that both $V$ and $W$ are finite-dimensional. Since $T$ is injective and surjective, we must have that

$$
\text{nullity}(T) = 0 \text{ and } \text{rank}(T) = \dim(R(T)) = \dim(W).
$$

By the Dimension Theorem, we have that $\text{rank}(T) = \dim(V)$ which implies that

$$\dim(V) = \dim(W).$$

■

**Theorem 2.4.3** (Invertibility of Linear Maps $\Leftrightarrow$ Invertibility of Matrices). Let $V$ and $W$ be finite-dimensional vector spaces with ordered bases $\beta$ and $\gamma$, respectively. Let $T : V \to W$ be linear. Then $T$ is invertible if and only if $[T]_\beta^\gamma$ is invertible. Furthermore, $[T^{-1}]_\gamma^\beta = ([T]_\beta^\gamma)^{-1}$.

**Proof.** Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces with ordered bases $\beta$ and $\gamma$ respectively. Let $T$ be linear. Suppose $T$ is invertible. Then there exists a unique linear transformation $T^{-1} : W \to V$ by definition. Hence, observe that

$$[T^{-1}]_\gamma^\beta [T]_\beta^\gamma = [T^{-1}T]_\beta = [I_V]_\beta = I_n$$

and similarly

$$[T]_\beta^\gamma [T^{-1}]_\gamma^\beta = [TT^{-1}]_\beta = [I_V]_\beta = I_n.$$

Hence, $[T]_\beta^\gamma$ is invertible and that

$$[T^{-1}]_\gamma^\beta = ([T]_\beta^\gamma)^{-1}.$$

Conversely, suppose that $[T]_\beta^\gamma$ is invertible. Since $V$ and $W$ are finite-dimensional vector spaces where $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ and $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n\}$ are ordered bases for $V$ and $W$, respectively. Hence, we know by Theorem 2.6 there exists a unique linear transformation $U : W \to V$ such that

$$U(w_j) = \sum_{i=1}^n B_{ij} v_i$$

where $v_i \in \beta$. Since $[T]_\beta^\gamma = A$ is invertible, we know that

$$AB = BA = I_n.$$

We want to show that $UT = I_V$ and $TU = I_W$. Define the matrix representation $[U]_\gamma^\beta$. We need to show that $U = T^{-1}$. Hence, we have

$$[UT]_\beta = [U]_\gamma^\beta [T]_\beta^\gamma = BA = I_n = [I_V]_\beta$$

and

$$[TU]_\gamma = [T]_\beta^\gamma [U]_\gamma^\beta = AB = I_n = [I_W]_\gamma$$

by Theorem 2.11. Hence, we have $UT = I_V$ and $TU = I_W$. Thus, $T$ is invertible. ■

**Example 2.4.2.** Let $\beta$ and $\gamma$ be the standard ordered bases of $P_1(\mathbb{R})$ and $\mathbb{R}^2$, respectively. For $T$ as in Example 1, we have

$$[T]_\beta^\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad [T^{-1}]_\gamma^\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We can verify via matrix multiplication that both matrices are inverses of each other.

**Corollary.** Let $V$ be a finite-dimensional vector space with an ordered basis $\beta$, and let $T : V \to V$ be linear. Then $T$ is invertible if and only if $[T]_\beta$ is invertible. Furthermore, $[T^{-1}]_\beta = ([T]_\beta)^{-1}$.

**Proof.** Let $T : V \to V$ be linear and let $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ be an ordered basis for $V$. Suppose $T$ is invertible. Then there exists a unique linear transformation denoted by $T^{-1} : V \to V$ such that

$$TT^{-1} = T^{-1}T = I_V.$$

By using the Corollary to Theorem 2.11 and part (d) of Theorem 2.12, we must have that

$$[T]_\beta[T^{-1}]_\beta = [TT^{-1}]_\beta = [I_V]_\beta = I_n$$

and similarly,

$$[T^{-1}]_\beta[T]_\beta = [T^{-1}T]_\beta = [I_V]_\beta = I_n.$$

This tells us that $[T]_\beta$ is invertible and that

$$[T^{-1}]_\beta = ([T]_\beta)^{-1}.$$

For the backwards direction, the ordered basis $\beta$ defined earlier implies that there exists a unique linear transformation $U : V \to V$ defined by

$$U(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} A_{ij} v_i \text{ for } 1 \leq j \leq n.$$

We need to show that $U = T^{-1}$. Using the fact that $[T]_\beta$ is invertible, we can write

$$[TU]_\beta = [T]_\beta[U]_\beta = I_n = [I_V]_\beta$$

and similarly

$$[UT]_\beta = [U]_\beta[T]_\beta = I_n = [I_V]_\beta.$$

But this tells us that $UT = TU = I_V$. So, $U = T^{-1}$ and that $T$ is invertible. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $A$ be an $n \times n$ matrix. Then $A$ is invertible if and only if $L_A$ is invertible. Furthermore, $(L_A)^{-1} = L_{A^{-1}}$.

**Proof.** Let $L_A : F^n \to F^n$. Let $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ be a basis for $F^n$. By part (a) of Theorem 2.15, we have that $[L_A]_\beta = A$. Since $A$ is invertible, we know that $L_A$ must also be invertible by Corollary to Theorem 2.18. Furthermore, we have that $L_A L_{A^{-1}} = I$ implies that

$$L_{A^{-1}} = (L_A)^{-1}.$$

Conversely, $L_A$ invertible implies that $[L_A]_\beta$ is invertible by Corollary to Theorem 2.18. By Theorem 2.15, we must have that $[L_A]_\beta = A$. But this means that $A$ is invertible. ∎

### 2.4.3 Isomorphisms

**Definition 2.4.3** (Isomorphisms). Let $V$ and $W$ be vector spaces. We say that $V$ is **isomorphic** to $W$ if there exists a linear transformation $T : V \to W$ that is invertible. Such a linear transformation is called an **isomorphism** from $V$ to $W$.

**Theorem 2.4.4** (Isomorphisms $\Leftrightarrow$ Equal Finite-Dimensions). Let $V$ and $W$ be finite-dimensional vector spaces (over the same field). Then $V$ is isomorphic to $W$ if and only if $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $V$ is isomorphic to $W$ and $T : V \to W$ is an isomorphism from $V$ to $W$. By the lemma preceding Theorem 2.18, we have that $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$.

Now, suppose that $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$, and let $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ and $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n\}$. By Theorem 2.6, there exists a unique linear transformation $T : V \to W$ such that $T(v_i) = w_i$ for all $i$. Then by Theorem 2.2, we must have that

$$R(T) = \mathrm{span}(T(\beta)) = \mathrm{span}(\gamma) = W.$$

Hence, $T$ is onto. By Theorem 2.5, we must also have that $T$ is one-to-one. Hence, $T$ is an isomorphism. ∎

**Remark.** Using the lemma to Theorem 2.18, we find that $V$ and $W$ are finite-dimensional or infinite-dimensional when they are isomorphic to each other.

**Corollary.** Let $V$ be a vector space over $F$. Then $V$ is isomorphic to $F^n$ if and only if $\dim(V) = n$.

We are now in the position to show that the collection of all linear transformations between two vector spaces, say $V$ and $W$ with different dimensions $m$ and $n$, can be identified with the appropriate vector space of $m \times n$ matrices.

**Theorem 2.4.5** (Isomorphism Between Linear Transformations and Matrices). Let $V$ and $W$ be finite-dimensional vector spaces $F$ of dimensions $n$ and $m$, respectively, and let $\beta$ and $\gamma$ be ordered bases for $V$ and $W$ respectively. Then the function $\Phi : \mathcal{L}(V, W) \to M_{m \times n}(F)$, defined by

$$\Phi(T) = [T]_\beta^\gamma \text{ for } T \in \mathcal{L}(V, W)$$

is an isomorphism.

**Proof.** First, we show that $\Phi$ is linear. Using Theorem 2.8, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}
\Phi(aT + U) &= [aT + U]_\beta^\gamma \\
&= a[T]_\beta^\gamma + [U]_\beta^\gamma \\
&= a\Phi(T) + \Phi(U).
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, $\Phi$ is linear.

In order to show that $\Phi$ is isomorphic, it suffices to show that $\Phi$ is both injective and surjective. Clearly, $\Phi$ is injective since for every $T, U \in \mathcal{L}(V, W)$, we have $\Phi(T) = \Phi(U)$ implies $[T]_\beta^\gamma = [U]_\beta^\gamma \Rightarrow T = U$. For surjectivity, let $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ and $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_m\}$ be ordered bases for $V$ and $W$ respectively, and let $A$ be a given $m \times n$ matrix. By Theorem 2.6, there exists a unique linear transformation $T : V \to W$ such that

$$T(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^m A_{ij} w_i, \text{ for } 1 \leq j \leq n.$$

But then we have $[T]_\beta^\gamma = A$ or $\Phi(T) = A$. Hence, $\Phi$ is an isomorphism. ■

**Corollary.** Let $V$ and $W$ be finite-dimensional vector spaces of dimensions $n$ and $m$, respectively. Then $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ is finite-dimensional of dimension $mn$.

**Proof.** By Theorem 2.20, $\Phi : \mathcal{L}(V, W) \to M_{m \times n}(F)$ is an isomorphism. Then we have $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ finite-dimensional with $\dim(\mathcal{L}(V, W)) = \dim(M_{m \times n}(F)) = mn$ by Theorem 2.19. ■

### 2.4.4  Standard Representation of Vector Spaces

**Definition 2.4.4** (Standard Representation of $V$). Let $\beta$ be an ordered basis for an $n-$dimensional vector space $V$ over the field $F$. The **standard representation of $V$ with respect to $\beta$** is the function $\phi_\beta : V \to F^n$ defined by $\phi_\beta(x) = [x]_\beta$ for each $x \in V$ .

**Example 2.4.3.** Let $\beta = \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$ and $\gamma = \{(1, 2), (3, 4)\}$. It is easily observed that $\beta$ and $\gamma$ are ordered bases for $\mathbb{R}^2$. For $x = (1, -2)$, we have

$$\phi_\beta(x) = [x]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \phi_\gamma(x) = [x]_\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

In the last two sections, we showed that $\phi_\beta$ is a linear transformation.

**Theorem 2.4.6.** For any finite-dimensional vector space $V$ with ordered basis $\beta$, $\phi_\beta$ is an isomorphism.

**Proof.** Let $\dim(V) = n$. Let $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ be an ordered basis for $V$. We can show that $\phi_\beta(y)$ is an isomorphism by showing that $\phi_\beta$ is a surjective and injective linear map. Suppose $\phi_\beta(x) = \phi_\beta$. Then by definition of $\phi_\beta$, we must have that $[x]_\beta = [y]_\beta$ which further implies that $x = y$. Now, let $y \in V$. Since $\beta$ is an ordered basis for $V$, we can find scalars $\delta_1, \delta_2, \ldots, \delta_n$ such that

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \delta_i v_i.$$

This implies that we have constructed a coordinate vector such that $[y]_\beta = \phi_\beta(y)$. Hence, $\phi_\beta$ is surjective. Thus, we find that $\phi_\beta$ is an isomorphism. ■

- Given finite-dimensional vector spaces $V$ and $W$ with corresponding bases $\beta$ and $\gamma$ respectively, we can use $\phi_\beta$ and $\phi_\gamma$ to map $V$ to $F^n$ and $W$ to $F^m$ respectively by the Theorem above.

- Let $T : V \to W$ be a linear transformation. We can map $V$ into $W$ using $T$ and use $\phi_\gamma$ to map $W$ onto $F^m$.

- Likewise, let $A = [T]_\beta^\gamma$. Then mapping $V$ onto $F^n$ using $\phi_\beta$ allows us to map the result onto $F^m$ using $L_A : F^n \to F^m$ which produces the same vector in $F^m$ as the transformation above.

- We can conclude, using Theorem 2.14, that

$$L_A \phi_\beta = \phi_\gamma T.$$

- Since $V$ and $W$ are associated with $F^n$ and $F^m$ respectively, we can now 'identify' $T$ with $L_A$.

---

**Example 2.4.4.** Suppose we have the linear transformation $T : P_3(\mathbb{R}) \to P_2(\mathbb{R})$ defined by

$$T(f(x)) = f'(x).$$

Let $\beta$ and $\gamma$ be the standard ordered bases for $P_3(\mathbb{R})$ and $P_2(\mathbb{R})$, respectively. Let $\phi_\beta : P_3(\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbb{R}^4$ and $\phi_\gamma : P_2(\mathbb{R}) \to R^3$ be the corresponding standard representations of $P_3(\mathbb{R})$ and $P_2(\mathbb{R})$. If $A = [T]_\beta^\gamma$, then

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Consider the polynomial $p(x) = 2 + x - 3x^2 + 5x^3$. We will show that

$$L_A \phi_\beta(p(x)) = \phi_\gamma T(p(x)).$$

Using standard matrix operations, we get

$$L_A \phi_\beta(p(x)) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -6 \\ 15 \end{pmatrix}.$$

But notice that by the same operations, we have

$$\phi_\gamma T(p(x)) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -6 \\ 15 \end{pmatrix}.$$

So $L_A \phi_\beta(p(x)) = \phi_\gamma T(p(x))$.

---

## 2.5 The Change of Coordinate Matrix

### 2.5.1 The Change of Coordinate Matrix

**Definition 2.5.1** (Change of Coordinate Matrix). Let $\beta$ and $\beta'$ be two ordered bases for a finite-dimensional vector space $V$. The matrix $Q = [I_V]_{\beta'}^\beta$ is the **Change of Coordinate Matrix**.

**Theorem 2.5.1** (Properties of Change of Coordinates Matrix). Let $\beta$ and $\beta'$ be two ordered bases for a finite-dimensional vector space $V$, and let $Q = [I_V]_{\beta'}^\beta$. Then

(a) $Q$ is invertible.

(b) For any $v \in V$, $[v]_\beta = Q[v]_{\beta'}$.

**Proof.**   (a) Since $I_V$ is invertible, $Q$ is also invertible by Theorem 2.18.

(b) Let $v \in V$. Since $I_V(v) = v$ and that $\beta$ and $\beta'$ are ordered bases for $V$, we can write

that

$$[v]_\beta = [I_V(v)]_\beta = [I_V]_{\beta'}^\beta [v]_{\beta'} = Q[v]_{\beta'}$$

by using Theorem 2.14 .

■

- The matrix $Q = [I_V]_{\beta'}^\beta$ is the **Change of Coordinate Matrix**.

- In the theorem above, part (b) states $Q$ is what allows us to change from one set of coordinates to another.

- Letting $\beta = \{x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\}$ and $\beta' = \{x_1', x_2', \ldots, x_n'\}$, then

$$x_j' = \sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_{ij} x_i \quad \text{for} \quad 1 \le j \le n$$

where the $j$th column of $Q$ is $[x_j']_\beta$.

- Since $Q$ is invertible, we can say that $Q^{-1}$ is its inverse and that $Q^{-1}$ changes $\beta$ coordinates back into $\beta'$ coordinates.

**Example 2.5.1.** In $\mathbb{R}^2$, let $\beta = \{(1,1), (1,-1)\}$ and $\beta' = \{(2,4), (3,1)\}$. We can express each basis vector of $\beta'$ as a linear combination of vectors from $\beta$; that is,

$$(2,4) = 3(1,1) - 1(1,-1) \text{ and } (3,1) = 2(1,1) + 1(1,-1),$$

the matrix that changes $\beta'-$coordinates into $\beta-$coordinates is

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Now, using part (b) of the above the theorem before this, we get that

$$[(2,4)]_\beta = Q[(2,4)]_{\beta'} = Q \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

For the remainder of this section, we consider only linear transformations that map a vector space $V$ into itself.

### 2.5.2 Properties of Change of Coordinate Matrices

**Definition 2.5.2** (Linear Operators). Let $V$ be a vector space. A linear transformation $T$ that maps $V$ into $V$ is called a **Linear Operator** on $V$.

If $V$ is finite-dimensional such that $\beta$ and $\beta'$ are ordered bases for $V$, then $V$ can be represented in terms of the matrix representations $[T]_\beta$ and $[T]_{\beta'}$. Our goal for the rest of section is to find the relationship between these two matrices. Indeed, the next theorem answers this question using the help of coordinate matrices.

**Theorem 2.5.2.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space $V$, and let $\beta$ and $\beta'$ be ordered bases for $V$. Suppose that $Q$ is the change of coordinate matrix that

changes $\beta'-$coordinates into $\beta-$coordinates. Then

$$[T]_{\beta'} = Q^{-1}[T]_\beta Q.$$

**Proof.** Let $I_V$ be the identity transformation on $V$ and note that $Q = [I_V]_{\beta'}^\beta$ is invertible. Then $T = I_V T = T I_V$ and thus Theorem 2.11 implies that

$$\begin{aligned}
[T]_{\beta'} &= [TI_V]_{\beta'} \\
&= [T]_\beta [I_V]_{\beta'}^\beta \\
&= [T]_\beta Q \\
&= [I_V T]_\beta Q \\
&= [I_V]_\beta^{\beta'} [T]_\beta Q \\
&= Q^{-1}[T]_\beta Q.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have $[T]_{\beta'} = Q^{-1}[T]_\beta Q.$ ∎

**Example 2.5.2.** Let $T$ be the linear operator on $\mathbb{R}^2$ defined by

$$T\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3a - b \\ a + 3b \end{pmatrix}$$

and let $\beta$ and $\beta'$ be the ordered bases as defined in Example 1. One can easily verify that

$$[T]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Using the change of coordinate matrix that changes $\beta'-$coordinates into $\beta-$coordinates found in Example 1

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$Q^{-1} = \frac{1}{5}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

By using Theorem 2.23, we have

$$[T]_{\beta'} = Q^{-1}[T]_\beta Q = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

To show that this is, indeed, the correct matrix, we can verify that the image under $T$ of each vector of $\beta'$ can be expressed as the linear combination of the vectors of $\beta'$ with the entries of the corresponding column as its coefficients. That is, the image of the second vector in $\beta'$ is

$$T\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} = 1\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + 2\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and likewise the first vector of $\beta'$ can be written as

$$T\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 14 \end{pmatrix} = 4\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - 2\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Example 2.5.3.** In this example, we wish to find an expression for $T(a,b)$ for any $(a,b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. Note that $T$ being linear implies that its values can be determined on a basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$. Observe from Figure 2.5 that $T(1,2) = (1,2)$ and that $T(-2,1) = -(-2,1) = (2,-1)$. If we let

$$\beta' = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\},$$

then $\beta'$ is an ordered basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$ and that

$$[T]_{\beta'} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let $\beta$ be the standard basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$, and let $Q$ be the matrix that changes $\beta'-$coordinates into $\beta-$coordinates. Then

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and $Q^{-1}[T]_\beta Q = [T]_{\beta'}$. We can solve this equation for $[T]_\beta$ to obtain that $[T]_\beta = Q[T]_{\beta'}Q^{-1}$. Since

$$Q^{-1} = \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

we can easily verify that

$$[T]_\beta = \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 4 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since $\beta$ is the standard ordered basis, it follows that $T$ is left-multiplication by $[T]_\beta$. Hence, for any $(a,b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$, we have

$$T \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 4 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} -3a + 4b \\ 4a + 3b \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Corollary.** Let $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$, and let $\gamma$ be an ordered basis for $F^n$. Then $[L_A]_\gamma = Q^{-1}AQ$ where $Q$ is the $n \times n$ matrix whose $j$th column is the $j$th column is the $j$th vector of $\gamma$.

**Proof.** Observe that part (a) of Theorem 2.15 implies that $[L_A]_\gamma = A$. Note that $Q = [I_{F^n}]_\gamma$ and that $I_{F^n}L_A = L_A I_{F^n}$ so we write

$$\begin{aligned} Q[L_A]_\gamma &= [I_{F^n}]_\gamma [L_A]_\gamma \\ &= [I_{F^n}L_A]_\gamma \\ &= [L_A I_{F^n}]_\gamma \\ &= [L_A]_\gamma [I_{F^n}]_\gamma \\ &= AQ. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$Q[L_A]_\gamma = AQ \tag{1}$$

. Since $Q$ is invertible, we can do left-multiplication of $Q^{-1}$ on both sides of (1) to get our desired result

$$[L_A]_\gamma = Q^{-1}AQ.$$

$\blacksquare$

**Example 2.5.4.** Let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and let

$$\gamma = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\},$$

which is an ordered basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$. Let $Q$ be the $3 \times 3$ matrix whose $j$th column is the $j$th vector of $\gamma$. Then

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad Q^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Using the Corollary to Theorem 2.23, we can see that

$$[L_A]_\gamma = Q^{-1}AQ = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2 & 8 \\ -1 & 4 & 6 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

### 2.5.3 Similar Matrices

**Definition 2.5.3** (Similar Matrices). Let $A$ and $B$ be matrices in $M_{n \times n}(F)$. We say that $B$ is **similar** to $A$ if there exists an invertible matrix $Q$ such that $B = Q^{-1}AQ$.

- Similarity, just as the notion of the isomorphism seen in the last section, is an equivalence relation.

- In the context of Theorem 2.23, if $T$ is a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space $V$, and if $\beta$ and $\beta'$ are any ordered bases for $V$, then $[T]_{\beta'}$ is similar to $[T]_\beta$.

- We can also extend Theorem 2.23 to allow linear maps such as $T : V \to W$ with distinct vector spaces $V$ and $W$.

# Chapter 3

# Elementary Matrix Operations and Systems of Linear Equations

## 3.1 Matrix Operations and Matrices

**Definition 3.1.1** (Elementary Row (Column) Operations). Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix. Any one of the following three operations on the rows [columns] of $A$ is called an **elementary row [column] operation**:

(1) Interchanging any two rows [columns] of $A$;

(2) Multiplying any row [column] of $A$ by a nonzero scalar;

(3) Adding any scalar multiple of a row [column] of $A$ to another row [column].

Any of these operations is called an **elementary operation**. Elementary operations of **type 1, type 2,** or **type 3** depending on whether they are obtained by (1), (2), (3).

If a matrix $Q$ can be obtained from a matrix $P$ via an elementary row operation, then $P$ can be obtained from $Q$ via an elementary row operation of the same type.

**Definition 3.1.2** (Elementary Matrix). An $n \times n$ **elementary matrix** is a matrix obtained by performing an elementary operation on $I_n$. The elementary matrix is said to be of **type 1, 2,** or **3** according to whether the elementary operation performed on $I_n$ is a type 1,2, or 3 operation, respectively.

The next theorem shows that performing an elementary row operation on a matrix is equivalent to multiplying the matrix by an elementary matrix.

**Theorem 3.1.1.** Let $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$, and suppose that $B$ is obtained from $A$ by performing an elementary row [column] operation. Then there exists an $m \times m$ [$n \times n$] elementary matrix $E$ such that $B = EA[B = AE]$. In fact, $E$ is obtained from $I_m$ [$I_n$] by performing the same elementary row [column] operation as that which was performed on $A$ to obtain $B$. Conversely, if $E$ is an elementary $m \times m$ [$n \times n$] matrix, then $EA[AE]$ is the matrix obtained from $A$ by performing the same elementary row [column] operation as that which produces $E$ from $I_m[I_n]$.

**Theorem 3.1.2** (Elementary Matrices are Invertible). Elementary matrices are invertible, and the inverse of an elementary matrix is an elementary matrix of the same type.

**Proof.** Let $E$ be an elementary $n \times n$ matrix. Then $E$ can be obtained by an elementary row operation on $I_n$. By reversing the steps used to transform $I_n$ into $E$, we can transform $E$ back into $I_n$. ∎

## 3.2   The Rank Of A Matrix And Matrix Inverses

### 3.2.1   Defining the Rank of a Matrix

In this section, we will

- Define the *rank* of a matrix.

- Compute the rank of a matrix and a linear transformation.

- Create a procedure for computing the inverse of an invertible matrix.

> **Definition 3.2.1** (Rank). If $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$, we define the **rank** of $A$, denoted rank$(A)$ to be the rank of the linear transformation $L_A : F^n \to F^m$.

- An important result derives from fact 3 and Corollary 2 to Theorem 2.18 is that *an $n \times n$ matrix is invertible if and only if its rank is $n$.*

- The rank of a matrix is equivalent to the rank of the linear transformation $L_A$.

> **Theorem 3.2.1.** Let $T : V \to W$ be a linear transformation between finite-dimensional vector spaces, and let $\beta$ and $\gamma$ be ordered bases for $V$ and $W$, respectively. Then rank$(T) =$ rank$([T]_\beta^\gamma)$.

> **Proof.** This is a restatement of Exercise 20 of Section 2.4. ∎

- We can see now that finding the rank of a linear transformation can be done by finding the rank of a matrix.

- The next theorem will show us a method on how to do this.

- This allows us to do these operations in a rank-preserving way on matrices.

> **Theorem 3.2.2.** Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix. If $P$ and $Q$ are invertible $m \times m$ and $n \times n$ matrices, respectively, then
>
> (a) rank$(AQ) =$ rank$(A)$,
>
> (b) rank$(PA) =$ rank$(A)$,
>
> (c) rank$(PAQ) =$ rank$(A)$.

> **Proof.**   (a) Let $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$. Observe that
>
> $$R(L_{AQ}) = R(L_A L_Q) = L_A L_Q(F^n) = L_A(L_Q(F^n)) = L_A(F^n) = R(L_A)$$

where $L_Q$ is surjective. Hence, we have

$$\text{rank}(AQ) = \dim(R(L_{AQ})) = \dim(R(L_A)) = \text{rank}(A)$$

and so, $\text{rank}(AQ) = \text{rank}(A)$.

(b) Note that $L_A(F^n)$ is a subspace of $F^m$. So, we must have $\dim(L_A(F^n)) = \dim(L_P(L_A(F^n)))$ by Exercise 17. We can apply this result to write that

$$R(L_{PA}) = R(L_P L_A) = L_P L_A(F^n) = L_P(L_A(F^n)) = L_A(F^n) = R(L_A)$$

which implies that

$$\text{rank}(PA) = \dim(R(L_{PA})) = \dim(R(L_A)) = \text{rank}(A)$$

and so, we have $\text{rank}(PA) = \text{rank}(A)$.

(c) Applying part (a) and (b), we can see that

$$\text{rank}(PAQ) = \text{rank}(PA) = \text{rank}(A).$$

$\blacksquare$

**Corollary.** Elementary row and column operations on a matrix are rank-preserving.

**Proof.** If $B$ is obtained from a matrix $A$ by an elementary row operation, then there exists an elementary matrix $E$ such that $B = EA$ by Theorem 3.1. Since $E$ is an invertible matrix, we use Theorem 3.4 to conclude that $\text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(B)$. Similarly, if $B$ is obtained from a matrix $A$ by an elementary column operation, then there exists an elementary matrix $E$ such that $B = AE$ by Theorem 3.1. Then we have $\text{rank}(B) = \text{rank}(AE) = \text{rank}(A)$ by Theorem 3.4 and we are done. $\blacksquare$

This result allows us to preserve the rank of matrices while using elementary operations on them. The next theorem allows us to find out the rank of a transformed matrix.

**Theorem 3.2.3.** The rank of any matrix equals the maximum number of its linearly independent columns; that is, the rank of a matrix is the dimension of the subspace generated by its columns.

**Proof.** Let $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$. Then observe that

$$\text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(L_A) = \dim(R(L_A)).$$

Let $\beta = \{e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_n\}$ be the standard ordered basis of $F^n$. Since $L_A : F^n \to F^m$ is linear, we know by Theorem 2.2 that

$$R(L_A) = \text{span}(L_A(\beta)) = \text{span}(\{L_A(e_1), L_A(e_2), \ldots, L_A(e_n)\}).$$

Observe that for each $1 \leq j \leq n$ that

$$L_A(e_j) = Ae_j = a_j$$

where $a_j$ is the $j$th column of $A$. So, we have that

$$R(L_A) = \text{span}(\{a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n\}).$$

∎

**Example 3.2.1.** Suppose we have the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

In this example, we can see quite easily that the first two rows are linearly independent and that the third column is a linear combination of the first two. Thus, we can see that the rank of $A$ is just 2.

**Remark.** In much less trivial matrices, it is often much easier to perform appropriate elementary row and column operations to convert the matrix in question to a suitable one so that one can easily see the linearly independent columns of said matrix through the accumulation of more zero entries. Remember that the Corollary to Theorem 3.4 guarantees that our simplifying operations will preserve the rank of our matrix.

**Example 3.2.2.** Let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Observe that

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 - R_1 \text{ and } R_3 - R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 - 2R_1 \text{ and } R_3 - 2R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

for which we can see that the maximum number of linearly independent columns of $A$ is 2 (again this fact is possible since our operations are rank preserving). Hence, the rank of $A$ is 2.

These set of operations to convert a given matrix into a simpler form is used to prove the following fact.

**Theorem 3.2.4** (Echelon Row (Column) Reduction). Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix of rank $r$. Then $r \le m, r \le n$, and, y means of a finite number of elementary row and column

operations, $A$ can be transformed into the matrix

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & O_1 \\ O_2 & O_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

where $O_1, O_2, \ldots, O_3$ are zero matrices. Thus, $D_{ii} = 1$ for $i \leq r$ and $D_{ij} = 0$ otherwise.

**Proof.** If $A$ is the zero matrix, then we have $r = 0$ by Exercise 3. Hence, we have $D = A$. Otherwise, suppose $A \neq O$ and $r = \text{rank}(A)$. So, $r > 0$. Let us proceed with induction on $m$, the number of rows of $A$. Let $m = 1$ be our base case. Using at most one type 1 column operation and at most one type 2 column operation, $A$ can be transformed into a matrix with a 1 in the $1, 1$ position. By means of at most $n - 1$ type 3 column operations, $A$ can be turned into the following matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Thus, we can see that the first column is a (the only) linearly independent column in $D$. Since the rank of $A$ is preserved, we get that $\text{rank}(D) = \text{rank}(A) = 1$ by Theorem 3.4. Hence, this ends our base case.

Assume that this theorem holds for any matrix with at most $m - 1$ rows (that is, for some $m > 0$). Our goal is to show that the theorem holds for any matrix with $m$ rows.

Suppose that $A$ is any $m \times n$ matrix. Suppose $n = 1$. Then Theorem 3.6 can be shown in similarly as we have done wen we fixed $m = 1$. Otherwise, let $n > 1$. Since $A \neq O$, we must have that $A_{ij} \neq 0$ for some $i, j$.

Utilizing both at most one elementary row and at most elementary column operation (both of each are type 1 operations), we can move the nonzero entry to the $1, 1$ position. Now, an additional type 2 operation can ensure a 1 in the $1, 1$ position. This has an effect of creating the following matrix

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & B' & \\ 0 & & & \end{pmatrix}$$

where $B'$ has a rank of one less than $B$. Since $\text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(B)$, we mus have $\text{rank}(B') = r - 1$. Hence, $r - 1 \leq m - 1$ and $r - 1 \leq n - 1$ by the induction hypothesis. Thus, we have $r \leq m$ and $r \leq n$.

Using the induction hypothesis again, $B'$ can be transformed into

$$D' = \begin{pmatrix} I_{r-1} & O_4 \\ O_5 & O_6 \end{pmatrix}$$

(an $(m-1) \times (n-1)$ matrix) via a finite number of elementary row and column operations. Note that $O_4, O_5,$ and $O_6$ are zero matrices and that $D'$ contains $r - 1$ diagonal entries containing 1 and everywhere else containing 0. Thus, we have

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & D' & \\ 0 & & & \end{pmatrix}.$$

We can show through a repeated set of applications involving elementary row and column operations that $D$ can be obtained from $B$ (Exercise 12). Since $A$ can be transformed into $B$ and $B$ can be transformed into $D$ through a finite number of elementary operations, $A$ can be transformed into $D$ by a finite number of elementary operations.

Since $D'$ contains ones in its first $r-1$ diagonal entries, we can see that $D$ contains ones in its first $r$ diagonal entires and zeros elsewhere. This establishes the theorem. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix of $\text{rank}(A) = r$. Then there exist invertible matrices $B$ and $C$ of sizes $m \times m$ and $n \times n$, respectively, such that $D = BAC$, where

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & O_1 \\ O_2 & O_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

is the $m \times n$ matrix in which $O_1, O_2$, and $O_3$ are zero matrices.

**Proof.** By Theorem 3.6, $A$ can be transformed into $D$ via a finite number of elementary row and elementary column operations. We can use Theorem 3.1 to state that there exist elementary $m \times m$ matrices $E_1, E_2, \ldots, E_p$ and elementary $n \times n$ matrices $G_1, G_2, \ldots, G_q$ such that

$$D = E_p E_{p-1} \cdots E_2 E_1 A G_1 G_2 \cdots G_q$$

for each elementary row and column operation done on $A$ to convert it into $D$. By Theorem 3.2, we can see that each $E_j$ and $G_j$ is invertible. So, let $B = E_p E_{p-1} \cdots E_2 E_1$ and let $C = G_1 G_2 \cdots G_q$. Using exercise 4 of section 2.4, we can see that $B$ and $C$ are invertible and thus $D = BAC$. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix. Then

(a) $\text{rank}(A^t) = \text{rank}(A)$.

(b) The rank of any matrix equals the maximum number of its linearly independent rows; that is, the rank of a matrix is the dimension of the subspace generated by its rows.

(c) The rows and columns of any matrix generate subspaces of the same dimension, numerically equal to the rank of the matrix.

**Proof.**  (a) Using Corollary 1, there exists invertible matrices $B$ and $C$ such that $D = BAC$, where

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & O_1 \\ O_2 & O_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

is an $m \times n$ matrix with the conditions satisfied in the Corollary. Taking the transpose of both sides of $D = BAC$, we get that

$$D^t = (BAC)^t = C^t A^t B^t.$$

Note that $B^t$ and $C^t$ are invertible by Exercise 5 of Section 2.4. So, Theorem 3.4 implies that

$$\text{rank}(A^t) = \text{rank}(C^t A^t B^t) = \text{rank}(D^t).$$

Since $\text{rank}(A) = r$, we know that $D^t$ is an $n \times n$ matrix with the form found as in $D$ in Corollary 1, and thus $\text{rank}(D^t)$ must also have the same rank by Theorem 3.5. Hence, we have

$$\text{rank}(A^t) = \text{rank}(D^t) = r = \text{rank}(A).$$

(b) Left as an exercise. *Similar process used to prove Theorem 3.5*

(c) Left as an exercise.

∎

**Corollary.** Every invertible matrix is a product of elementary matrices.

**Proof.** Let $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$ be an invertible matrix. Thus, $\text{rank}(A) = n$ and then by Corollary 1, there exists $m \times m$ and $n \times n$ invertible matrices $B$ and $C$, respectively, such that $I_n = BAC$ where $B = E_p E_{p-1} \cdots E_2 E_1$ and $C = G_q G_{q-1} \cdots G_2 G_1$. Thus, we have that

$$A = B^{-1} I_n C^{-1} = B^{-1} C^{-1}$$

where $B^{-1} = E_1 E_2 \cdots E_{p-1} E_p$ and $C^{-1} = G_1 G_2 \cdots G_{q-1} G_q$. Note that that each $E_j$ and $G_j$ making up the product of $B^{-1}$ and $C^{-1}$ are elementary matrices by Theorem 3.2. ∎

**Theorem 3.2.5.** Let $T : V \to W$ and $U : W \to Z$ be linear transformations on finite-dimensional vector spaces $V, W$, and $Z$, and let $A$ and $B$ matrices such that the product $AB$ is defined. Then

(a) $\text{rank}(UT) \le \text{rank}(U)$.

(b) $\text{rank}(UT) \le \text{rank}(T)$.

(c) $\text{rank}(AB) \le \text{rank}(A)$.

(d) $\text{rank}(AB) \le \text{rank}(B)$.

**Proof.**   (a) Note that $R(T) \subseteq W$. So, we must have

$$R(UT) = UT(V) = U(T(V)) = U(R(T)) \subseteq U(W) = R(U).$$

We can see by Theorem 1.11 that $R(UT) \subseteq R(U)$ implies that $\text{rank}(UT) \le \text{rank}(U)$.

(c) Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{rank}(AB) = \text{rank}(L_{AB}) &= \text{rank}(L_A L_B) \\
&\le \text{rank}(L_A) \qquad\qquad \text{(By part (a))} \\
&= \text{rank}(A).
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, $\text{rank}(AB) \le \text{rank}(A)$.

(d) Observe that $(AB)^t = B^t A^t$. So, we have

$$\text{rank}((AB)^t) = \text{rank}(B^t A^t) \le \text{rank}(B^t).$$

By Corollary 3 to Theorem 3.6, we must have $\text{rank}(B^t) = \text{rank}(B)$ and that $\text{rank}((AB)^t) = \text{rank}(AB)$. Thus, we have that $\text{rank}(AB) \le \text{rank}(B)$.

(b) Let $\alpha, \beta$, and $\gamma$ be ordered bases for $V, W$ and $Z$, respectively. Thus, $[T]_\alpha^\beta, [U]_\beta^\gamma$ and

$[UT]_\alpha^\gamma$ are defined. Since these are just matrices, we can see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{rank}(UT) &= \mathrm{rank}([UT]_\alpha^\gamma) && \\
&= \mathrm{rank}([U]_\beta^\gamma [T]_\alpha^\beta) && \text{(Theorem 2.11)} \\
&\leq \mathrm{rank}([T]_\alpha^\beta) && \text{(part (d))} \\
&= \mathrm{rank}(T). &&
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, we have $\mathrm{rank}(UT) \leq \mathrm{rank}(T)$.

∎

### 3.2.2   The Inverse of a Matrix

**Definition 3.2.2** (Augmented Matrices). Let $A$ and $B$ be $m \times n$ and $m \times p$ matrices, respectively. By the **augmented matrix** $(A|B)$, we mean the $m \times (n+p)$ matrix $(A|B)$, that is, the matrix who first $n$ columns are the columns of $A$, and whose last $p$ columns are the columns of $B$.

We can see that performing a left-multiplication by an elementary matrix creates a matrix via an elementary row operation (See Theorem 3.1). This tells us the following important fact:

**Proposition 3.2.1.** If $A$ is an invertible $n \times n$ matrix, then it is possible to transform the matrix $(A|I_n)$ into the matrix $(I_n|A^{-1})$ by means of a finite number of elementary row operations. Conversely, if for some $n \times n$ matrix $B$, the matrix $(A|I_n)$ can be transformed into the matrix $(I_n|B)$ by a finite number of elementary row operations, then $B = A^{-1}$.

**Proof.** Suppose $A$ is an invertible $n \times n$ matrix. Consider the augmented matrix $C = (A|I_n)$. Using Exercise 15, we can see that

$$
A^{-1}C = (A^{-1}A|A^{-1}I_n) = (I_n|A^{-1}).
$$

Using Corollary 3 to Theorem 3.6, we can see that $A^{-1}$ is the product of elementary matrices, say $A^{-1} = E_p E_{p-1} \cdots E_2 E_1$. Thus, we have that

$$
E_p E_{p-1} \cdots E_1 (A|I_n) = A^{-1}C = (I_n|A^{-1})
$$

and we are done. Conversely, suppose that $A$ is invertible and that, for some $n \times n$ matrix $B$, the matrix $(A|I_n)$ can be transformed into the matrix $(I_n|B)$ by a finite number of elementary row operations. Let $E_1, E_2, \ldots, E_p$ be elementary matrices associated with elementary row operations found in Theorem 3.1. Then we see that

$$
E_p E_{p-1} \ldots E_1 (A|I_n) = (I_n|B).
$$

Letting $M = E_p E_{p-1} \cdots E_1$, we have from the equation above that

$$
(MA|M) = M(A|I_n) = (I_n|B).
$$

Thus, we can see that $MA = I_n$ and $M = B$. Since $A$ is invertible, this must mean that $M = A^{-1}$ and that $B = A^{-1}$.

∎

- If $A$ is $n \times n$ matrix not invertible, then it is not possible to transform $(A|I_n)$ into $(I_n|B)$.

- We also have that $\mathrm{rank}(A) < n$.

- An attempt to transform $(A|I_n)$ into $(B|I_n)$ will produce a row that contains zeros in the first $n$ entries.

# Chapter 4

# Determinants

## 4.1 Determinants of Order 2

This section will go over the definition of the determinant of $2 \times 2$ matrices and its geometric significance in terms of area and orientation.

### 4.1.1 Basic Properties of Determinants

**Definition 4.1.1** (Determinants). If

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$$

is a $2 \times 2$ matrix with entries from a field $F$, then we define the **determinant** of $A$, denoted $\det(A)$ or $|A|$, to be the scalar $ad - bc$.

**Example 4.1.1.** For the matrices

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 6 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

in $M_{2\times 2}(\mathbb{R})$, the determinant of these two matrices are

$$\det(A) = 1 \cdot 4 - 2 \cdot 3 = -2 \text{ and } \det(B) = 3 \cdot 4 - 2 \cdot 6 = 0$$

A common intuition that we have about determinants is that we think that

$$\det(A + B) = \det(A) + \det(B)$$

which is NOT generally true. Keep in mind that the mapping $\det : M_{2\times 2}(F) \to F$ is NOT a linear transformation, but it does posses an important linearity property which will presented below.

**Theorem 4.1.1.** The function $\det : M_{2\times 2}(F) \to F$ is a linear function of each row of a $2 \times 2$ matrix when the other row is held fixed. That is, if $u, v$ and $w$ are in $F^2$ and $k$ is some scalar, then

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} u + kv \\ w \end{pmatrix} = \det \begin{pmatrix} u \\ w \end{pmatrix} + k \begin{pmatrix} u \\ w \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} w \\ u + kv \end{pmatrix} = \det \begin{pmatrix} w \\ u \end{pmatrix} + k\det \begin{pmatrix} w \\ v \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Proof.** Let $u, v, w \in F^2$ be defined by $u = (a_1, a_2)$, $v = (b_1, b_2)$, and $w = (c_1, c_2)$. Using the definition of determinant, we have that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\det \begin{pmatrix} u \\ w \end{pmatrix} + k\det \begin{pmatrix} v \\ w \end{pmatrix} &= \det \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{pmatrix} + k\det \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= (a_1 c_2 - a_2 c_1) + k(b_1 c_2 - b_2 c_1) \\
&= (a_1 + kb_1)c_2 - (a_2 + kb_2)c_1 \\
&= \det \begin{pmatrix} a_1 + kb_1 & a_2 + kb_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \det \begin{pmatrix} (a_1, a_2) + k(b_1, b_2) \\ (c_1, c_2) \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \det \begin{pmatrix} u + kv \\ w \end{pmatrix}.
\end{aligned}
$$

The proof for the other equation is similar. ∎

- In Example 1, notice how $A$ is invertible and $B$ is not.

- Also, $A$ contains a nonzero determinant and $B$ has a zero determinant.

- It turns our the invertibility is tied to nonzero determinants which will be presented in the next theorem.

**Theorem 4.1.2.** Let $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$. Then the determinant of $A$ is nonzero if and only if $A$ is invertible. Moreover, if $A$ is invertible, then

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{\det(A)} \begin{pmatrix} A_{22} & -A_{12} \\ -A_{21} & A_{11} \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Proof.** Suppose $\det(A) \neq 0$, then we can define a matrix

$$M = \frac{1}{\det(A)} \begin{pmatrix} A_{22} & -A_{12} \\ -A_{21} & A_{11} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Thus, all we need to show is that $MA = AM = I$. Observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
AM &= \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\det(A)} \begin{pmatrix} A_{22} & -A_{12} \\ -A_{21} & A_{11} \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{\det(A)} \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12} & -A_{11}A_{12} + A_{12}A_{11} \\ A_{22}A_{21} - A_{21}A_{22} & A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21} \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{\det(A)} \begin{pmatrix} \det(A) & 0 \\ 0 & \det(A) \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= I.
\end{aligned}
$$

CHAPTER 4. DETERMINANTS

Hence, $AM = I$ and a similar computation proves that $MA = I$. Hence, $A$ is invertible and that $M = A^{-1}$.

Conversely, suppose that $A$ is invertible. Using the remark found in page 152, we have that the rank of

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

must be 2. Hence, $A_{11} \neq 0$ or $A_{21} \neq 0$. If $A_{11} \neq 0$, then add $-A_{21}/A_{11}$ times row 1 of $A$ to row 2 to obtain the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} - \frac{A_{12}A_{21}}{A_{11}} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since elementary row operations are rank-preserving by the corollary to Theorem 3.4, it follows that

$$A_{22} - \frac{A_{12}A_{21}}{A_{11}} \neq 0 \Rightarrow A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21} \neq 0.$$

Now, suppose $A_{21} \neq 0$, we can see that $\det(A) \neq 0$ by adding $-A_{11}/A_{21}$ times row 2 of $A$ to row 1 and applying a similar argument. Thus, in either case, $\det(A) \neq 0$. $\blacksquare$

In the upcoming sections, we will generalize the definition of the determinant to $n \times n$ matrices and show that the theorem above holds for these more general matrices.

### 4.1.2 The Area of a Parallelogram

This section will cover the geometric significance of the determinant of a $2 \times 2$ matrix. First, we start off by defining the notion of an angle in $\mathbb{R}^2$.

**Definition 4.1.2** (Angle). Define **angle** between two vectors $u, v \in \mathbb{R}^2$ as the measure $\theta$ $(0 \leq \theta \leq \pi)$ that is formed by the vectors having the same magnitude and direction as the given vectors but emanating from the origin.

**Definition 4.1.3** (Orientation). If $\beta = \{u, v\}$ is an ordered basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$, we define the **orientation** of $\beta$ to be the real number

$$O \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \frac{\det \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}}{\left| \det \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \right|}.$$

## 4.2 Determinants of Order $n$

### 4.2.1 Cofactor Expansions

Before introducing the definition of the determinant for $n \times n$ matrices for $n \geq 3$, we will give a definition of deleting rows in a given matrix $A$.

Suppose we have

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{pmatrix} \in M_{3 \times 3}(\mathbb{R}).$$

Denote the $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrix obtained from $A$ by deleting row $i$ and column $j$ by $\tilde{A}_{ij}$.

Then we have

$$\tilde{A}_{11} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 6 \\ 8 & 9 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \tilde{A}_{13} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 5 \\ 7 & 8 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{A}_{32} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Definition 4.2.1.** Let $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$. If $n = 1$, so that $A = (A_{11})$, we define $\det(A) = A_{11}$. For $n \geq 2$, we define $\det(A)$ recursively as

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}).$$

The scalar $\det(A)$ is called the **determinant** of $A$ and is also denoted by $|A|$. The scalar

$$(-1)^{i+j} \det(\tilde{A}_{ij})$$

is called the **cofactor** of the entry of $A$ in row $i$, column $j$.

We can re-write the cofactor of the row $i$, column $j$ entry of $A$ as

$$c_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} \det(\tilde{A}_{ij})$$

so that we can express the formula given in the definition above as

$$\det(A) = A_{11}c_{11} + A_{12}c_{12} + \cdots + A_{1n}c_{1n}.$$

The formula above is denoted as the **cofactor expansion along the first row** of $A$. If $n = 2$, then this formula corresponds with the definition given in section 4.1.

**Example 4.2.1.** We will show that the $n \times n$ identity matrix is 1. We prove this assertion by using induction on $n$. This result holds for our base case of $n = 1$ by definition of the determinant. Assume that the determinant of the $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ identity matrix is 1 for some $n \geq 2$, and let $I$ denote the $n \times n$. Using cofactor expansion along the first row of $I$, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \det(I) &= (-1)^2(1) \cdot \det(\tilde{I}_{11} + (-1)^3(0) \cdot \det(\tilde{I}_{12})) + \cdots \\ &\quad + (-1)^{1+n}(0) \cdot \det(\tilde{I}_{1n}) \\ &= 1(1) + 0 + \cdots + 0 \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

since $\tilde{I}_{11}$ is the $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ identity matrix. This shows that the determinant of the $n \times n$ matrix is 1, and so the determinant of any identity matrix is 1 by the principle of mathematical induction.

- As one can see, the operations involved when computing determinants using the recursive definition can be quite tedious.

- From here on, we will try to develop a more efficient method for computing them using the linearity property of determinants (not to mistaken linearity that we have been going over in this book).

## 4.2.2 The Determinant is a Linear Function

**Theorem 4.2.1.** The determinant of an $n \times n$ matrix is a linear function of each row when the remaining rows are held fixed. That is, for $1 \leq r \leq n$, we have

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_{r-1} \\ u + kv \\ a_{r+1} \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} = \det \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_{r-1} \\ u \\ a_{r+1} \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} + k \det \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_{r-1} \\ v \\ a_{r+1} \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}$$

whenever $k$ is a scalar and $u, v$, and each $a_i$ are row vectors in $F^n$.

**Proof.** We proceed by mathematical induction on $n$. The result is immediate if $n = 1$. Assume that for some integer $n \geq 2$ the determinant of any $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrix is a linear function of each row when the remaining rows are held fixed. Let $A$ be an $n \times n$ matrix with rows $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$, respectively, and suppose that for some $r (1 \leq r \leq n)$, we have $a_r = u + kv$ for some $u, v \in F^n$ and some scalar $k$. Let $u = (b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n)$ and $v = (c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_n)$, and let $B$ and $C$ be the matrices obtained from $A$ by replacing row $r$ of $A$ by $u$ and $v$, respectively.

For $r > 1$ and $1 \leq j \leq n$, the rows of the deleted matrices $\tilde{A}_{1j}, \tilde{B}_{1j}$, and $\tilde{C}_{1j}$ are the same except for row $r - 1$. Moreover, row $r - 1$ of $\tilde{A}_{1j}$ is

$$(b_1 + kc_1, \ldots, b_{j-1} + kc_{j-1}, b_{j+1} + kc_{j+1}, \ldots, b_n + kc_n),$$

which is the sum of row $r - 1$ of $\tilde{B}_{1j}$ and $k$ times row $r - 1$ of $\tilde{C}_{1j}$. Since $\tilde{B}_{1j}$ and $\tilde{C}_{1j}$ are $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrices, we have

$$\det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) = \det(\tilde{B}_{1j}) + k \det(\tilde{C}_{1j})$$

by induction hypothesis. Using the recursive definition for the determinant and the fact that $A_{1j} = B_{1j} = C_{1j}$, we write

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1j})$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot \left[ \det(\tilde{B}_{1j}) + k \det(\tilde{C}_{1j}) \right]$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{B}_{1j}) + k \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{C}_{1j})$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} B_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{B}_{1j}) + k \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} C_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{C}_{1j})$$

$$= \det(B) + k \det(C).$$

Hence, this shows that the theorem is true for $n \times n$ matrices, and so the theorem is true for all square matrices by mathematical induction. ∎

**Remark.** For $r = 1$, notice that $a_1 = u + kv$ with $u, v \in F^n$ as defined as before where $k$

is a non-zero scalar. Furthermore, we have that the rows of the deleted matrices $\tilde{A}_{1j}, \tilde{B}_{1j}$, and $\tilde{C}_{1j}$ are all equal to each other except for $r = 1$. Using the recursive definition of the determinant of $A$ and that $A_{1j} = b_j + kv_j$, we get that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\det(A) &= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) \\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} (b_j + kc_j) \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) \\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} b_j \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) + k \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} c_j \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) \\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} B_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{B}_{1j}) + k \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} C_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{C}_{1j}) \\
&= \det(A) + k\det(C).
\end{aligned}
$$

**Corollary.** If $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ has a row consisting entirely of zeros, then $\det(A) = 0$.

**Proof.** Left to the reader as an exercise (of course). ∎

### 4.2.3 Cofactor Expansion Along Any Row

The next theorem will show that the determinant of any square matrix can be computed using cofactor expansion along any row. Before we proceed with the proof of this fact, we need to prove a preliminary result.

**Lemma 4.2.1.** Let $B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$, where $n \geq 2$. If row $i$ of $B$ equals $e_k$ for some $k (1 \leq k \leq n)$, then $\det(B) = (-1)^{i+k}\det(\tilde{B}_{1k})$.

**Proof.** We proceed by performing mathematical induction on $n$. The lemma can be easily proved for $n = 2$. Assume that for some integer $n \geq 3$, the lemma is true for $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrices, and let $B$ be an $n \times n$ matrix in which row $i$ of $B$ equals $e_k$ for some $k$ $(1 \leq k \leq n)$. The result follows immediately from the definition of the determinant if $i = 1$.

Suppose therefore that $1 < i \leq n$. For each $j \neq k$ $(1 \leq j \leq n)$, let $C_{ij}$ denote the $(n-2) \times (n-2)$ matrix obtained from $B$ by deleting rows 1 and $i$ and columns $j$ and $k$. For each $j$, row $i-1$ of $\tilde{B}_{1j}$ is the following vector in $F^{n-1}$:

$$
\begin{cases}
e_{k-1} & \text{if } j < k \\
0 & \text{if } j = k \\
e_k & \text{if } j > k.
\end{cases}
$$

Using the induction hypothesis and the corollary to Theorem 4.3, we can write

$$
\det(\tilde{B}_{1j}) = \begin{cases}
(-1)^{(i-1)+(k-1)}\det(C_{ij}) & \text{if } j < k \\
0 & \text{if } j = k \\
(-1)^{(i-1)+k}\det(C_{ij}) & \text{if } j > k.
\end{cases}
$$

Then we can see that

$$\det(B) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} B_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{B}_{1j})$$

$$= \sum_{j<k} (-1)^{1+j} B_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{B}_{1j}) + \sum_{j>k} (-1)^{1+j} B_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{B}_{1j})$$

$$= \sum_{j<k} (-1)^{1+j} B_{1j} \cdot \left[ (-1)^{(i-1)+(k-1)} \det(C_{ij}) \right]$$

$$+ \sum_{j>k} (-1)^{1+j} B_{1j} \cdot \left[ (-1)^{(i-1)+k} \det(C_{ij}) \right]$$

$$= (-1)^{i+k} \left[ \sum_{j<k} (-1)^{1+j} B_{1j} \cdot \det(C_{ij}) \right.$$

$$+ \left. \sum_{j>k} (-1)^{1+(j-1)} B_{1j} \cdot \det(C_{ij}) \right].$$

Note that the expression on the inside of the last equality is just the cofactor expansion of $\tilde{B}_{ik}$ along the first row, it follows that

$$\det(B) = (-1)^{i+k} \det(\tilde{B}_{ik})$$

which ends our induction argument on why this lemma holds for all $n \times n$ matrices. ∎

Now, this gives us the machinery to be able to use cofactor expansion along any row which is the basis for our next theorem.

**Theorem 4.2.2.** The determinant of a square matrix can be evaluated by cofactor expansion along any row. That is, if $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$, then for any integer $i$ $(1 \le i \le n)$,

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{i+j} A_{ij} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{ij}).$$

**Proof.** Let $i = 1$. Using cofactor along the $i = 1$ row gives us the determinant of $A$ by definition. Fix $i > 1$. Note that the $i$th row of $A$ can be written as $\sum_{j=1}^{n} A_{ij} e_j$. For $1 \le j \le n$, replace the $i$th row of $A$ by $e_j$ to obtain $B_j$. Using Theorem 4.3 and lemma, we have

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} A_{ij} \det(B_j) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{i+j} A_{ij} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{ij}).$$

∎

**Corollary.** If $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ has two identical rows, then $\det(A) = 0$.

**Proof.** We proceed the proof via mathematical induction on $n$. The proof for the case that $n = 2$ is proved in Exercise 6 of Section 4.1. Now, assume that for some integer $n \ge 3$, it is true for $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrices, and let rows $r$ and $s$ of $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ be identical for $r \ne s$. Since $n \ge 3$, we can choose an integer $i$ $(1 \le i \le n)$ other than $r$ and $s$. Using

Theorem 4.4, we can see that

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^{n}(-1)^{i+j}A_{ij}\cdot\det(\tilde{A}_{ij}).$$

Since $\tilde{A}_{ij}$ is an $(n-1)\times(n-1)$ matrix with two identical rows, our induction hypothesis tells us that for each $\det(\tilde{A}_{ij}) = 0$, and thus we have $\det(A) = 0$. This completes the induction proof for $n \times n$ matrices, and so the lemma must be true for all square matrices. ∎

### 4.2.4 Effect of Elementary Operations on Determinant

Now, we will investigate what the behavior of the determinant will be if we were to perform type 1 operations on a matrix; that is, exchanging rows in a matrix.

**Theorem 4.2.3.** If $A \in M_{n\times n}(F)$ and $B$ is a matrix obtained from $A$ by interchanging any two rows of $A$, then $\det(B) = -\det(A)$.

**Proof.** Let the rows of $A \in M_{n\times n}(F)$ be $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$, and let $B$ be the matrix obtained from $A$ by interchanging rows $r$ and $s$, where $r < s$. Thus, we have

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_r \\ \vdots \\ a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } B = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_r \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}.$$

Suppose we replaced rows $r$ and $s$ of $A$ by $a_r + a_s$. Then by Corollary to Theorem 4.4 and Theorem 4.3, we have

$$0 = \det\begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_r + a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_r + a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} = \det\begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_r \\ \vdots \\ a_r + a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} + \det\begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_r + a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \det\begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_r \\ \vdots \\ a_r \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} + \det\begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_r \\ \vdots \\ a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} + \det\begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_r \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} + det\begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_s \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= 0 + \det(A) + \det(B) + 0.$$

CHAPTER 4.   DETERMINANTS

Solving for $\det(B)$ now gives us the following result

$$\det(B) = -\det(A).$$

∎

Next, we show that performing a type 3 elementary row operation does not change the determinant of a matrix.

**Theorem 4.2.4.** Let $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$, and let $B$ be a matrix obtained by adding a multiple of one row of $A$. Then $\det(B) = \det(A)$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $B$ is the $n \times n$ matrix obtained from $A$ by adding $k$ times row $r$ to row $s$, where $r \neq s$. Let the rows of $A$ be $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$, and the rows of B $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$. Then $a_i = b_i$ except for when $i = s$ and $b_s = a_s + ka_r$. Suppose we replace row $s$ with $a_r$ to create a matrix $C$. Then using Theorem 4.3 leads to

$$\det(B) = \det \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_s + ka_r \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix} = \det \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_s \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix} + k\det \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_r \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \det(A) + k\det(C)$$
$$= \det(A) + 0 \qquad \text{(Corollary to Theorem 4.4)}$$

which implies that $\det(B) = \det(A)$. ∎

**Corollary.** If $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ has rank less than $n$, then $\det(A) = 0$.

**Proof.** If $\text{rank}(A) < n$, then the rows $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ of $A$ are linearly dependent. Using Exercise 14 of Section 1.5, we know that some row of $A$, say row $r$, is a linear combination of the other rows. Hence, there must exist scalars $c_i$ such that

$$a_r = c_1 a_1 + \cdots + c_{r-1} a_{r-1} + c_{r+1} a_{r+1} + \cdots + c_n a_n.$$

Let $B$ be the matrix obtained from $A$ by adding $-c_i$ times row $i$ to row $r$ for each $i \neq r$. Then row $r$ of $B$ consists entirely of zeros, and so $\det(B) = 0$. Now, Theorem 4.6 tells us that $\det(B) = \det(A)$ and that $\det(A) = 0$. ∎

Now, we summarize the effect that specific elementary operations have on the determinant of a matrix.

(a) Interchanging any two rows of $A$ implies $\det(B) = -\det(A)$.

(b) Scaling any row of $A$ by some non-zero scalar implies that $\det(B) = k\det(A)$.

(c) Adding a multiple of one row of $A$ to another row of $A$ leaves the determinant of a matrix unchanged; that is, $\det(B) = \det(A)$.

Let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -3 \\ -3 & -5 & 2 \\ -4 & 4 & -6 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Adding 3 times row 1 of $A$ to row 2 and 4 times row 1 to row 3, we obtain

$$M = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & -3 \\ 0 & 4 & -7 \\ 0 & 16 & -18 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since we obtained $M$ via type 3 elementary row operations, we see that $\det(A) = \det(M)$. We can use cofactor expansion along the first row to give us

$$\det(M) = (-1)^{1+1} \cdot \det(\tilde{M}_{11}) + (-1)^{1+2} \cdot \det(\tilde{M}_{12})$$
$$+ (-1)^{1+3}(-3) \cdot \det(\tilde{M}_{13}).$$

Notice how $\tilde{M}_{12}$ and $\tilde{M}_{13}$ contain a column that consists entirely of zeros, and so we must have $\det(\tilde{M}_{12}) = \det(\tilde{M}_{13}) = 0$ by corollary to Theorem 4.6. Hence, we can write

$$\det(M) = (-1)^{1+1}(1) \cdot \det(\tilde{M}_{11})$$
$$= (-1)^{1+1}(1) \cdot \det \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -7 \\ 16 & -18 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$= 1[4(-18) - (-7)(16)] = 40.$$

We can make this even easier by turning $M$ into an upper triangular matrix so that computing the determinant is a matter of just taking the product of the diagonal entries of $M$. Adding $-4$ times row 2 of $M$ to row 3 (type 3 elementary row operation), we obtain

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & -3 \\ 0 & 4 & -7 \\ 0 & 0 & 10 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Taking the cofactor expansion of the first row, we find that

$$\det(P) = (-1)^{1+1}(1) \cdot \det(\tilde{P}_{11})$$
$$= (-1)^{1+1}(1) \cdot \det \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -7 \\ 0 & 10 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$= 1 \cdot 4 \cdot 10 = 40.$$

So, we have $\det(A) = \det(M) = \det(P) = 40$ and thus $\det(A) = 40$

## 4.3 Summary

For the matrices that are mentioned, we assume all of them are square matrices.

### 4.3.1 Basics

- The **Determinant** is a function that takes in square matrices and outputs a scalar in $F$, denoted by $\det(A)$ or $|A|$.

- If $A$ is $n \times n$ matrix for $n > 2$, we can evaluate $\det(A)$ by *cofactor expansion along row $i$* as
$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{i+j} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{ij}).$$

- Likewise, we can use *cofactor expansion* along column $j$ as
$$\det(A) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} (-1)^{i+j} A_{ij} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{ij}).$$

- In both cases, the *deleted matrix* $\tilde{A}_{ij}$ is an order of $n-1$ and can be obtained by deleting row $i$ and column $j$ from $A$.

It is advantageous to simplify a given square matrix as much as possible to reduce the number of computations to calculate $\det(A)$. The following are important operations that one can perform to do this and how it effects the determinant.

### 4.3.2   Properties of Determinant

- If $B$ is a matrix obtained by interchanging any two rows or interchanging any two columns of an $n \times n$ matrix $A$, then $\det(B) = -\det(A)$.

- If $B$ is a matrix obtained by multiplying each entry of some row or column of an $n \times n$ matrix $A$ by a scalar $k$, then $\det(B) = k \cdot \det(A)$.

- If $B$ is a matrix obtained from an $n \times n$ matrix $A$ by adding a multiple of row $i$ to row $j$ or a multiple of column $i$ to column $j$ for $i \neq j$, then $\det(A) = \det(B)$.

- The determinant of an upper triangular matrix is the product of its diagonal entries. Note that $\det(I) = 1$.

- If a given square matrix consists of two rows or two columns that are identical, then the determinant of that matrix is zero.

- $\det(AB) = \det(A)\det(B)$.

- An $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is invertible if and only if $\det(A) \neq 0$. Furthermore, if $A$ is invertible, then we find that
$$\det(A^{-1}) = \frac{1}{\det(A)}.$$

- For any $n \times n$ matrix $A$, the determinants of $A$ and $A^t$ are equal.

- If $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ are similar, then $\det(A) = \det(B)$.

# Chapter 5

# Diagonalization

## 5.1 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors

Our goal in this section is to find a basis $\beta'$ for which the matrix representation of a linear operator $T$ is a diagonal matrix.

> **Definition 5.1.1** (Diagonalization). A linear operator $T$ on a finite-dimensional vector space $V$ is called **diagonalizable** if there is an ordered basis $\beta$ for $V$ such that $[T]_\beta$ is a diagonal matrix. A square matrix $A$ is called **diagonalizable** if $L_A$ is diagonalizable.

Given a finite-dimensional vector space $V$, we can find an ordered basis $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ for $V$ such that the linear operator $T$ acting on $V$ contains a matrix representation that is diagonal. If this is accomplished, then $D = [T]_\beta$ is a diagonal matrix where for each $v_j \in \beta$, we have

$$T(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} D_{ij} v_i = D_{jj} = \lambda_j v_j.$$

Conversely, the ordered basis $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is an ordered basis for $V$ where $T(v_j) = \lambda_j v_j$ for some scalars $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n$. Thus, the matrix representation is

$$[T]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}.$$

Note that each vector $v \in \beta$ satisfies the condition that $T(v) = \lambda v$ for some scalar $\lambda$. Since $v \in \beta$, we also get that $v \neq 0$.

> **Definition 5.1.2** (Eigenvectors and Eigenvalues). Let $T$ be a linear operator on a vector space $V$. A nonzero vector $v \in V$ is called an **eigenvector** of $T$ if there exists a scalar $\lambda$ such that $T(v) = \lambda v$. The scalar $\lambda$ is called the **eigenvalue** corresponding to the eigenvector $v$.
>
> Let $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$. A nonzero vector $v \in F^n$ is called an **eigenvector** of $A$ if $v$ is an eigenvector of $L_A$; that is, if $Av = \lambda v$ for some scalar $\lambda$. The scalar $\lambda$ is called the **eigenvalue** of $A$ corresponding to the eigenvector $v$.

> **Theorem 5.1.1.** A linear operator $T$ on a finite-dimensional vector space $V$ is diagonalizable if and only if there exists an ordered basis $\beta$ for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$. Furthermore, if $T$ is diagonalizable, $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is an ordered basis of eigenvectors of $T$, and $D = [T]_\beta$, then $D$ is a diagonal matrix and $D_{jj}$ is the eigenvalue corresponding

to $v_j$ for $1 \le j \le n$.

**Corollary.** A matrix $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ is diagonalizable if and only if there exists an ordered basis for $F^n$ consisting of eigenvectors of $A$. Furthermore, if $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is an ordered basis for $F^n$ consisting of eigenvectors of $A$ and $Q$ is the $n \times n$ matrix whose $j$th column is $v_j$ for $j = 1, 2, \ldots, n,$, then $D = Q^{-1}AQ$ is a diagonal matrix such that $D_{jj}$ is the eigenvalue of $A$ corresponding to $v_j$. Hence, $A$ is diagonalizable if and only if it is similar to a diagonal matrix.

**Example 5.1.1** (Left-multiplication Operators). Let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad v_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad v_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Observe that

$$L_A(v_1) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = -2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = -2v_1.$$

Thus, we have that $v_1$ is an eigenvector of $L_A$, and thus of $A$ as well. Using the left-multiplication transformation again, we can write

$$L_A(v_1) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 15 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix} = 5 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = 5v_2.$$

This means that $v_2$ is an eigenvector of $L_A$, and thus is an eigenvector of $A$. We can see that $\beta = \{v_1, v_2\}$ is an ordered basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$ consisting of eigenvectors of both $A$ and $L_A$. By the Corollary above, we can state that $A$ and $L_A$ are diagonalizable. Using Theorem 5.1 and its corollary, if

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -1 & 4 \end{pmatrix},$$

then

$$Q^{-1}AQ = [L_A]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Theorem 5.1.2** (Eigenvalues and determinants). Let $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$. Then a scalar $\lambda$ is an eigenvalue of $A$ if and only if $\det(A - \lambda I_n) = 0$.

**Proof.** A scalar $\lambda$ is an eigenvalue if and only if there exists a nonzero $v \in F^n$ such that $L_A(v) = Av = \lambda v$. This is true if an only if

$$(A - \lambda I_n)(v) = 0.$$

This is also true if and only if

$$A - \lambda I_n = 0 \tag{1}$$

where 0 is the zero matrix. Since the 0 matrix is not invertible, we know that the matrix on the left side of (1) has

$$\det(A - \lambda I_n) = 0.$$

Observe that the converse of this argument proves the other direction. Hence, we are done. ∎

**Definition 5.1.3** (Characteristic Polynomial of a Matrix). Let $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$. The polynomial $f(t) = \det(A - tI_n)$ is called the **characteristic polynomial** of $A$.

**Remark.** We can see that the eigenvalues of a matrix are the roots of its characteristic polynomial.

**Definition 5.1.4** (Characteristic Polynomial and Determinant of a Transformation). Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space $V$. Choose any ordered basis $\beta$ for $V$. We define the **determinant** of $T$, denoted $\det(T)$, to be the determinant of $A = [T]_\beta$, and the **characteristic** polynomial $f(t)$ of $T$ to be the characteristic polynomial of $A$. That is,

$$f(t) = \det(A - tI_n).$$

**Theorem 5.1.3.** Let $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$.

(a) The characteristic polynomial of $A$ is a polynomial of degree $n$ with leading coefficient $(-1)^n$.

(b) $A$ has at most $n$ distinct eigenvalues.

**Proof.** ∎

**Theorem 5.1.4** (Determining Eigenvectors via Eigenvalues). Let $T$ be a linear operator on a vector space $V$, and let $\lambda$ be an eigenvalue of $T$. A vector $v \in V$ is an eigenvector of $T$ corresponding to $\lambda$ if and only if $v \neq 0$ and $v \in N(T - \lambda I)$.

**Proof.** Let $v \in V$ be an eigenvector of $T$ corresponding to $\lambda$. Since $\lambda$ is an eigenvalue of $T$, we know that $T(v) = \lambda v$ where $v \neq 0$. Hence,

$$T(v) = \lambda v \Leftrightarrow T(v) - \lambda v = 0$$
$$\Leftrightarrow (T - \lambda I)(v) = 0.$$

Note that this is true if and only if $v \in N(T - \lambda I)$. We can reverse this argument to show that $v \in V$ is an eigenvector of $T$ corresponding to $\lambda$. ∎

**Example 5.1.2.** It can be easily shown that the eigenvalues of

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

is $\lambda_1 = 3$ and $\lambda_2 = -1$. Let

$$B_1 = A - \lambda_1 I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

To find the associated eigenvector with the eigenvalue $\lambda_1 = 3$, we need to find a given nonzero

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^2$$

such that $x \in N(T - 3I)$. This can be done setting

$$\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2x_1 + x_2 \\ 4x_1 - 2x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

for which all we need to do is solve the following system of equations

$$-2x_1 + x_2 = 0$$
$$4x_1 - 2x_2 = 0$$

for which it can be easily seen that $x_1 = 1$ and $x_2 = 2$. Thus, the set of all solutions for the above can be represented by

$$\left\{ t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} : t \in \mathbb{R} \right\}.$$

Hence, we have that $x$ is an eigenvector corresponding to $\lambda_1 = 3$ if and only if

$$x = t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{for some } t \neq 0.$$

Suppose that $\beta$ is a basis for $F^n$ consisting of eigenvectors of $A$. We can use the corollary to Theorem 2.23 to say that if $Q$ is the $n \times n$ matrix where $Q's$ column vectors are vectors of $\beta$, then $Q^{-1}AQ$ is a diagonal matrix. Extending the example above, the $2 \times 2$ matrix

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

implies

$$Q^{-1}AQ = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

where the diagonal entries of this matrix are the eigenvalues of $A$ that are associated with to the respective columns of $Q$.

**Proposition 5.1.1.** Let $T : V \to V$, $\beta$ be an ordered basis for $V$ and $A = [T]_\beta$. Then $v \in V$ is an eigenvector of $T$ corresponding to $\lambda$ if and only if $\phi_\beta(v)$ is an eigenvector of $A$ corresponding to $\lambda$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $v$ is an eigenvector of $T$ corresponding to $\lambda$. So, $T(v) = \lambda v$. We need to show that $A\phi_\beta(v) = \lambda\phi_\beta(v)$.

$$A\phi_\beta(v) = L_A\phi_\beta(v) = \phi_\beta T(v) = \phi_\beta(\lambda v) = \lambda\phi_\beta(v).$$

Now we have $\phi_\beta(v) \neq 0$, since $\phi_\beta$ is an isomorphism and thus $\phi_\beta(v)$ is an eigenvector of $A$. Note that this argument is reversible, and we are done. ∎

**Example 5.1.3.** Let $T$ be the linear operator on $P_2(\mathbb{R})$ defined by $T(f(x)) = f(x) + (x + 1)f'(x)$ and let $\beta$ be the standard ordered basis for $P_2(\mathbb{R})$. Since $T$ contains eigenvalues $1, 2$, and $3$ and that

$$A = [T]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We will consider each eigenvalue separately. Now, let $\lambda_1 = 1$. Then

$$B_1 = A - \lambda_1 I = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then we can find the eigenvector

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3$$

corresponding to $\lambda_1$ if and only $x \neq 0$ and $x \in N(L_{B_1})$; that is, $x \neq 0$ is a solution to the system

$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_2 + 2x_3 = 0$$
$$2x_3 = 0.$$

Observe that $x_2 = x_3 = 0$ and $x_1$ is free, so assign $x_1 = a$. Thus, $x$ can be written in the following form

$$a \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = ae_1 \;\; \text{for } a \neq 0.$$

Consequently, the eigenvectors of $T$ corresponding to $\lambda_1 = 1$ are of the form

$$\phi_\beta^{-1}(ae_1) = a\phi_\beta^{-1}(e_1) = a \cdot 1 = a$$

Next, let $\lambda_2 = 2$, and define

$$B_2 = A - \lambda_2 I = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We can easily get that

$$N(L_{B_2}) = \left\{ a \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : a \in \mathbb{R} \right\}.$$

We can do the same process with $\lambda_3 = 3$ and obtain

$$B_3 = A - \lambda_3 I = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where

$$N(L_{B_3}) = \left\{ a \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} : a \in \mathbb{R} \right\}.$$

We can see that the eigenvectors of $T$ corresponding to $\lambda_3 = 3$ are of the form

$$\phi_\beta^{-1}\left(a \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}\right) = a\phi_\beta^{-1}(e_1 + 2e_2 + e_3) = a(1 + 2x + x^2)$$

for $a \neq 0$. Thus, we can assemble a new ordered basis $\gamma$ for $P_2(\mathbb{R})$ such that

$$\gamma = \{1, 1 + x, 1 + 2x, 1 + 2x + x^2\}$$

Hence, we have that $T$ is a diagonalizable, and

$$[T]_\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

## 5.2   Diagonalizability

Our goals in this section is to:

- Create a simple test to determine whether an operator or a matrix can be diagonalized.

- Develop a method for finding a basis of eigenvectors.

The next theorem that any constructed set that consists of eigenvectors is linearly independent.

**Theorem 5.2.1.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a vector space $V$, and let $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$ be distinct eigenvalues of $T$. If $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k$ are eigenvectors of $T$ such that $\lambda_i$ corresponds to $v_i$ $(1 \leq i \leq k)$, then $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ is linearly independent.

**Proof.** We proceed via mathematical induction on $k$. Suppose that $k = 1$. Let $\lambda_1$ be an eigenvalue corresponding to $v_1$. Since $v_1 \neq 0$, we have that $\{v_1\}$ is linearly independent. Now, assume that the theorem holds for $k - 1$ case. Note that $k - 1 \geq 1$. Our goal is to show that for some scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k$, we have

$$a_1 v_1 + a_2 v_2 + \cdots + a_k v_k = 0 \tag{1}$$

where $a_1 = a_2 = \cdots = a_k = 0$. Applying $T - \lambda_k I$ on both sides of (1), we have

$$(T - \lambda_k I)(a_1 v_1 + a_2 v_2 + \cdots + a_k v_k) = 0$$

implies

$$a_1(\lambda_1 - \lambda_k)v_1 + a_2(\lambda_2 - \lambda_k)v_2 + \cdots + a_{k-1}(\lambda_{k-1} - \lambda_k)v_{k-1} = 0.$$

Using our induction hypothesis, we have that $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_{k-1}\}$ implies that

$$a_1(\lambda_1 - \lambda_k) = a_2(\lambda_2 - \lambda_k) = \cdots + a_{k-1}(\lambda_{k-1} - \lambda_k) = 0.$$

Since $\lambda_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq k$ is distinct, we have that $\lambda_{i-1} - \lambda_i \neq 0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k - 1$. Consequently, this results in $a_i = 0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k-1$ which leaves us with $a_k v_k = 0$. Since $v_k$ is an eigenvector, we have $v_k \neq 0$ so $a_k = 0$. Thus, we have $a_1 = a_2 = \cdots = a_{k-1} = a_k = 0$ implies that $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ is a linearly independent set. ■

**Corollary.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on an $n-$dimensional vector space $V$. If $T$ has $n$ distinct eigenvalues, then $T$ is diagonalizable.

**Proof.** Suppose that $T$ has $n$ distinct eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n$. We can choose an eigenvalue $\lambda_i$ for each corresponding eigenvector $v_i$ for all $i$. Note that each $\lambda_i$ is distinct. Using Theorem 5.5, the set $\{v_1, \ldots, v_n\}$ is linearly independent. Since $\dim(V) = n$, this set is a basis for $V$. Thus, $T$ is diagonalizable via Theorem 5.1. ∎

**Example 5.2.1.** Let
$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in M_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{R}).$$

The characteristic polynomial of $A$ (and hence of $L_A$) is

$$\det(A - tI) = \det \begin{pmatrix} 1 - t & 1 \\ 1 & 1 - t \end{pmatrix} = t(t - 2).$$

We can see that the eigenvalues of $L_A$ are 0 and 2. These eigenvalues correspond to the eigenvectors of $L_A$ which form a basis such that $A$ is a diagonal matrix. Thus, $L_A$ is a linear-operator that is diagonalizable (and hence $A$ is also diagonalizable).

Note that it is not necessarily true that a diagonalizable linear operator contains $n$ distinct eigenvalues. A quick counter-example would be the identity operator. Even though $I$ is diagonalizable, it only contains one eigenvalue, namely, $\lambda = 1$.

This tells us that diagonalizability requires a much stronger condition on the characteristic polynomial.

**Definition 5.2.1 (Splits Over).** A polynomial $f(t)$ in $P(F)$ **splits over** $F$ if there are scalars $c, a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ (not necessarily distinct) in $F$ such that

$$f(t) = c(t - a_1)(t - a_2) \cdots (t - a_n).$$

The splitting behavior of a polynomial is different based on which field the polynomial is defined on. For example, we see that $t^2 - 1$ splits over $\mathbb{R}$, but $(t^2 + 1)(t - 2)$ does not since $t^2 + 1$ has no solutions in the real line. However, $t^2 + 1$ can further be split if it was defined over $\mathbb{C}$. In this case, $(t^2 + 1)(t - 2)$ does split over $\mathbb{C}$, namely, it splits into $(t + i)(t - i)(t - 2)$.

**Theorem 5.2.2.** The characteristic polynomial of any diagonalizable linear operator splits.

**Proof.** Let $T$ be a diagonalizable linear operator on the $n-$dimensional vector space $V$, and let $\beta$ be an ordered basis for $V$ such that $[T]_\beta = D$ is a diagonal matrix. Suppose that

$$\begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix},$$

and let $f(t)$ be the characteristic polynomial of $T$. Then

$$f(t) = \det(D - tI) = \det \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 - t & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 - t & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n - t \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= (\lambda_1 - t)(\lambda_2 - t)\cdots(\lambda_n - t) = (-1)^n(t - \lambda_1)(t - \lambda_2)\cdots(t - \lambda_n).$$

$\blacksquare$

- If $T$ is a diagonalizable linear operator but fails to have distinct eigenvalues, then the characteristic polynomial of $T$ must have repeated zeros.

- The converse of the theorem above is not true since not every characteristic polynomial of a linear operator of $T$ guarantees that $T$ be diagonalizable.

**Definition 5.2.2** (Algebraic Multiplicity). Let $\lambda$ be an eigenvalue of a linear operator or matrix with characteristic polynomial $f(t)$. The **(algebraic) multiplicity** of $\lambda$ is the largest positive integer $k$ for which $(t - \lambda)^k$ is a factor of $f(t)$.

Recall that a diagonalizable linear operator $T$ that is defined over a finite-dimensional vector space $V$ contains an ordered basis $\beta$ for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$. By Theorem 5.1, $[T]_\beta$ is a diagonal matrix in which the diagonal entries are the eigenvalues of $T$. Remember that each eigenvalue of $T$ corresponds to the diagonal entry of $[T]_\beta$ as many times as its multiplicity permits.

We can investigate the exact amount of independent eigenvectors that are associated with a given eigenvalue. A way we can do this is to look at the null space of $T - \lambda I$.

**Definition 5.2.3** (Eigenspace). Let $T$ be a linear operator on a vector space $V$ ,and let $\lambda$ be an eigenvalue of $T$. Define $E_\lambda = \{x \in V : T(x) = \lambda x\} = N(T - \lambda I_V)$. The set $E_\lambda$ is called the **eigenspace** of $T$ corresponding to the eigenvalue $\lambda$. Analogously, we define the **eigenspace** of a square matrix $A$ to be the eigenspace of $L_A$.

It can easily be proven that $E_\lambda$ is a subspace of $V$. The maximum number of linearly independent eigenvectors that correspond to a given eigenvalue can therefore be seen by taking the dimension of the given eigenspace.

**Theorem 5.2.3.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space $V$, and let $\lambda$ be an eigenvalue of $T$ having multiplicity $m$. Then $1 \leq \dim(E_\lambda) \leq m$.

**Proof.** Choose an ordered basis $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_p\}$ for $E_\lambda$ and extend this basis into $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_p, v_{p+1}, \ldots, v_n\}$ for $V$, and let $A = [T]_\beta$. Observe that $v_i$ $(1 \leq i \leq p)$ is an eigenvector of $T$ corresponding to $\lambda$, and therefore

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda I_p & B \\ O & C \end{pmatrix}.$$

By Exercise 21 of Section 4.3, the characteristic polynomial of $T$ is

$$f(t) = \det(A - tI_n) = \det \begin{pmatrix} (\lambda - t)I_p & B \\ O & C - tI_{n-p} \end{pmatrix}$$
$$= \det((\lambda - t)I_p)\det(C - tI_{n-p})$$
$$= (\lambda - t)^p g(t)$$

where $g(t) = \det(C - tI_{n-p})$ is a polynomial. Thus $(\lambda - t)^p$ is a factor of $f(t)$, and hence the multiplicity of $\lambda$ is at least $p$. However, $\dim(E_\lambda) = p$, and so $\dim(E_\lambda) \leq m$. ∎

**Lemma 5.2.1.** Let $T$ be a linear operator, and let $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$ be distinct eigenvalues of $T$. For each $i = 1, 2, \ldots, k$, and let $v_i \in E_{\lambda_i}$, the eigenspace corresponding to $\lambda_i$. If

$$v_1 + v_2 + \cdots + v_k = 0,$$

then $v_i = 0$ for all $i$.

The last two examples illustrate that operators whose characteristic polynomial splits is diagonalizable if and only if the multiplicity of $\lambda$ is equal to the dimension its corresponding eigenspace $E_\lambda$.

**Proof.** Suppose otherwise. By renumbering if necessary, suppose that, for $1 \leq m \leq k$, we have $v_i \neq 0$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$, and $v_i = 0$ for $i > m$. Then, for each $i \leq m$, $v_i$ is an eigenvector of $T$ corresponding to $\lambda_i$ and
$$v_1 + v_2 + \cdots + v_m = 0.$$

But this contradicts Theorem 5.5, which states that all $v_i$'s are linearly independent. Thus, we should have $v_i = 0$ for all $i$. ∎

**Theorem 5.2.4.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a vector space $V$, and let $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$ be distinct eigenvalues of $T$. For each $i = 1, 2, \ldots, k$, let $S_i$ be a finite linearly independent subset of the eigenspace $E_{\lambda_i}$. Then $S = S_1 \cup S_2 \cup \cdots \cup S_k$ is a linearly independent subset of $V$.

**Proof.** Suppose that for each $i$

$$S_i = \{v_{i1}, v_{i2}, \ldots, v_{in_i}\}.$$

Then $S = \{v_{ij} : 1 \leq j \leq n_i, \text{ and } 1 \leq i \leq k\}$. Consider any scalars $\{a_{ij}\}$ such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} a_{ij} v_{ij} = 0.$$

For each $i$, let

$$w_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} a_{ij} v_{ij}.$$

Then $w_i \in E_\lambda$, for each $i$, and

$$w_1 + w_2 + \cdots + w_k = 0.$$

Thus, we must have $w_i = 0$ for all $i$ by the lemma. Since each $S_i$ is linearly independent, we must have that $a_{ij} = 0$ for each $1 \leq j \leq n_i$. Thus, $S$ is linearly independent. ∎

The consequence of this theorem is that it creates a procedure for constructing a linearly independent subset of eigenvectors via collecting bases for individual eigenspaces. The following theorem allows us to determine when the resulting set becomes a basis for the entire space.

**Theorem 5.2.5.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space $V$ such that the characteristic polynomial of $T$ splits. Let $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$ be the distinct eigenvalues of $T$. Then

(a) $T$ is diagonalizable if and only if the multiplicity of $\lambda_i$ is equal to $\dim(E_{\lambda_i})$ for all $i$.

(b) If $T$ is diagonalizable and $\beta_i$ is an ordered basis for $E_{\lambda_i}$ for each $i$, then $\beta = \beta_1 \cup \beta_2 \cup \cdots \cup \beta_k$ is an ordered basis for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$.

**Proof.** For each $i$, let $m_i$ denote the multiplicity of $\lambda_i$, $d_i = \dim(E_{\lambda_i})$, and $n = \dim(V)$.

Suppose that $T$ is diagonalizable. Let $\beta$ be a basis for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$. For each $i$, let
$$\beta_i = \beta \cap E_{\lambda_i}$$
be the set of vectors in $\beta$ that are eigenvectors corresponding to $\lambda_i$, and let $n_i$ denote the number of vectors in $\beta_i$. Since each $\beta_i \subseteq E_{\lambda_i}$ and that each $\beta_i$ is linearly independent (Note that each $E_{\lambda_i}$ is a subspace), we have $n_i \leq d_i$. By Theorem 5.7, we have $d_i \leq m_i$.

Notice how all the $n_i$'s sum to $n$ because $\beta$ contains $n$ vectors. At the same time, all the $m_i$'s must also sum up to $n$ since the degree of the characteristic polynomial of $T$ must be $n$ which is also equal to the sum of all the multiplicities of the eigenvalues. Thus, we must have
$$n = \sum_{i=1}^{k} n_i \leq \sum_{i=1}^{k} d_i \leq \sum_{i=1}^{k} m_i = n$$
which implies that
$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} n_i - m_i = 0.$$

Since $m_i - d_i \geq 0$ for all $i$, we must have that $m_i = d_i$ for all $i$.

Conversely, suppose that $d_i = m_i$ for all $i$. We will show that $T$ is diagonalizable and prove (b). For each $\beta_i$ is an ordered basis for $E_{\lambda_i}$ and let $\beta = \beta_1 \cup \beta_2 \cup \cdots \cup \beta_k$. Using Theorem 5.8, we can see that $\beta$ is linearly independent. Since $d_i = m_i$ for all $i$, $\beta$ contains
$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} d_i = \sum_{i=1}^{k} = n$$

vectors. Since $\beta$ is a linearly independent subset of $V$ that contains equals $n$ vectors, we must have that $\beta$ spans $V$ via 2nd Corollary to the Replacement Theorem and thus $\beta$ is an ordered basis for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$ corresponding to each $\lambda_i$. But this also means that $T$ is diagonalizable by Theorem 5.1. ∎

### 5.2.1 Test for Diagonalization

**Proposition 5.2.1.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on an $n-$dimensional vector space $V$. Then $T$ is diagonalizable if and only if both of the following conditions hold:

(a) The characteristic polynomial of $T$ splits.

(b) For each eigenvalue $\lambda$ of $T$, the multiplicity of $\lambda$ equals $n - \text{rank}(T - \lambda I)$.

- We can also apply these conditions to any square matrix $A$ since testing whether $A$ is diagonalizable is just a matter of determining if the linear operator $L_A$ is diagonalizable.

- If $T$ is a diagonalizable operator and $\beta_1, \beta_2, \ldots, \beta_k$ are ordered bases each eigenspace of $T$, then the union $\beta = \beta_1 \cup \beta_2 \cup \cdots \cup \beta_k$ is an ordered basis for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$, and hence $[T]_\beta$ is a diagonal matrix via Theorem 5.1.

- To check whether a linear operator is diagonalizable, choose a suitable basis $\alpha$ and work with $B = [T]_\alpha$.

- Then check whether its characteristic polynomial splits and then check the second condition for each *repeated* eigenvalue of $B$. If a given eigenvalue $\lambda$ contains a multiplicity of 1 then the second condition is automatically satisfied. Thus, only check for multiplicity that is greater than 1.

- Given an $n \times n$ diagonalizable matrix, the corollary to Theorem 2.23 allows us to find an invertible $n \times n$ matrix $Q$ and a diagonal $n \times n$ matrix $D$ such that

$$Q^{-1}AQ = D.$$

- The matrix $Q$ contains the basis of eigenvectors of $A$, while $D$ contains the eigenvalue corresponding to the $j$th column of $Q$.

### 5.2.2 Direct Sums

**Definition 5.2.4** (Sum of Subspaces). Let $W_1, W_2, \ldots, W_k$ be subspaces of a vector space $V$. We define the **sum** of these subspaces to be the set

$$\{v_1 + v_2 + \cdots + v_k : v_i \in W_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k\},$$

which we denote by $W_1 + W_2 + \cdots + W_k$ or $\sum_{i=1}^{k} W_i$.

**Proposition 5.2.2.** The sum of subspaces of a vector space $V$ is also subspace.

**Proof.** Exercise ∎

**Definition 5.2.5** (Direct Sum of Subspaces). Let $W_1, W_2, \ldots, W_k$ be subspaces of a vector space $V$. We call $V$ the **direct sum** of the subspaces $W_1, W_2, \ldots, W_k$ and write $V = W_1 \oplus W_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus W_k$, if

$$V = \sum_{i=1}^{k} W_i$$

and

$$w_j \cap \sum_{i \neq j} W_i = \{0\} \text{ for } (1 \leq j \leq k).$$

**Theorem 5.2.6.** Let $W_1, W_2, \ldots, W_k$ be subspaces of a finite-dimensional vector space $V$. The following conditions are equivalent.

(a) $V = W_1 \oplus W_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus W_k$.

(b) $V = \sum_{i=1}^{k} W_i$ and, for any vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k$ such that $v_i \in W_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq k$, if $v_1 + v_2 + \cdots + v_k = 0$, then $v_i = 0$ for all $i$.

(c) Each vector $v \in V$ can be uniquely written as $v = v_1 + v_2 + \cdots + v_k$, where $v_i \in W_i$.

(d) If $\gamma_i$ is an ordered basis for $W_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq k$, then $\gamma_1 \cup \gamma_2 \cup \cdots \cup \gamma_k$ is an ordered basis for $V$.

(e) For each $i = 1, 2, \ldots, k$, there exists an ordered basis $\gamma_i$ for $W_i$ such that $\gamma_1 \cup \gamma_2 \cup \cdots \cup \gamma_k$ is an ordered basis for $V$.

**Proof.**  (b) Suppose that $V = W_1 \oplus W_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus W_k$. Let $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k$ such that $v_i \in W_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq k$. Suppose

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} v_i = 0.$$

Choose $i \neq j$ such that

$$-v_j = \sum_{i \neq j} v_i \in W_i.$$

But notice that $-v_j \in W_j$ and so we must have

$$-v_j \in W_j \cap \sum_{i \neq j} W_i = \{0\}.$$

Thus, $v_j = 0$ which subsequently proves that $v_i = 0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$.

(c) Assume (b). Let $v \in V$. Then there exists vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k$ such that

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^{k} v_i. \tag{1}$$

Suppose that there also exists vectors $w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_k$ such that

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^{k} w_i. \tag{2}$$

Then equating (1) and (2) and subtracting each $w_i$ on both sides, we obtain

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} (v_i - w_i) = 0.$$

By part (b), we must have $v_i - w_i = 0$ which subsequently leads to $v_i = w_i$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$. Thus, the representation $v$ is unique.

(d) Suppose (c). For each $i$, let $\gamma_i$ be an ordered basis for $W_i$. Since

$$V = \sum_{i=1}^{k} W_i$$

CHAPTER 5.  DIAGONALIZATION

by (c), it follows that $\gamma_1 \cup \gamma_2 \cup \cdots \cup \gamma_k$ generates $V$. Now, we will show that

$$\gamma = \gamma_1 \cup \gamma_2 \cup \cdots \cup \gamma_k$$

is linearly independent. Thus, consider vectors $v_{ij} \in \gamma_i$ where $1 \le j \le m_i$ (the number of elements in each $\gamma_i$) and scalars $a_{ij}$ such that

$$\sum_{i,j} a_{ij} v_{ij} = 0.$$

For each $i$, set

$$w_i = \sum_{j=1}^{m_i} a_{ij} v_{ij}.$$

Since each $\gamma_i$ is a basis for each $W_i$, we have $w_i \in \text{span}(\gamma_i)$ and that

$$w_1 + w_2 + \cdots + w_k = \sum_{i,j} a_{ij} v_{ij} = 0.$$

Since each $0 \in W_i$, for each $i$ and

$$0 + 0 + \cdots + 0 = w_1 + w_2 + \cdots w_k,$$

(b) and (c) implies that $w_i = 0$ for all $i$. Thus,

$$0 = w_i = \sum_{j=1}^{m_i} a_{ij} v_{ij}$$

for each $i$. Since each $\gamma_i$ is linearly independent, we must have each $a_{ij} = 0$ for all $i$ and $j$. Thus, $\gamma$ is linearly independent and therefore is a basis for $V$.

(e) This follows immediately from (d).

(a) Assume (e). For each $i$, let $\gamma_i$ be an ordered basis for $W_i$ such that

$$\gamma = \gamma_1 \cup \gamma_2 \cup \cdots \cup \gamma_k$$

is an ordered basis for $V$. Thus, we have $\text{span}(\gamma) = V$. By repeated applications of Exercise 14 from Section 1.4, we get that

$$\begin{aligned}
V &= \text{span}(\gamma_1 \cup \gamma_2 \cup \cdots \cup \gamma_k) \\
&= \text{span}(\gamma_1) + \text{span}(\gamma_2) + \cdots + \text{span}(\gamma_k) \\
&= W_1 + W_2 + \cdots + W_k \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{k} W_i.
\end{aligned}$$

Now, suppose for sake of contradiction that we fix some $j$ in $1 \le j \le k$, such that for some nonzero vector $v \in V$, we have

$$v \in W_j \cap \sum_{i \ne j} W_i.$$

Then we have both

$$v \in W_j = \text{span}(\gamma_j) \quad \text{and} \quad v \in \sum_{i \neq j}^{W_i} = \text{span}\left(\bigcup_{i \neq j} \gamma_i\right).$$

But this implies that $v$ can be written in a non-unique way, contradicting the result found in Theorem 1.8. Thus, we must have

$$W_j \cap \sum_{i \neq j} W_i = \{0\}$$

thereby showing that

$$V = \bigoplus_{i=1}^{k} W_i.$$

∎

**Theorem 5.2.7.** A linear operator $T$ on a finite-dimensional vector space $V$ is diagonalizable if and only if $V$ is the direct sum of the eigenspaces of $T$.

**Proof.** Let $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$ be the distinct eigenvalues of $T$.

For the forwards direction, suppose that $T$ is diagonalizable. For each $i$, choose an ordered basis $\gamma_i$ for each eigenspace $E_{\lambda_i}$. Using Theorem 5.9, we know that

$$\gamma = \bigcup_{i=1}^{k} \gamma_i$$

is a basis for for $V$, and hence $V$ is a direct sum of each eigenspace $E_{\lambda_i}$ of $T$ by Theorem 5.10.

For the backwards direction, suppose that $V$ is a direct sum of the eigenspaces of $T$. For each $i$, choose an ordered basis $\gamma_i$ for each $E_{\lambda_i}$. Using Theorem 5.10, we have that

$$\gamma = \bigcup_{i=1}^{k} \gamma_i$$

is a basis for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$. Thus, $T$ is diagonalizable by Theorem 5.1
.
∎

# Chapter 6

# Inner Product Spaces

There is a special space for notions such as distance or length which we will study in this section. We denote this space as the *inner product space*. This structure is what allows us to solve problems in geometry, physics, and other such fields that use the notion of distance or length.

## 6.1 Inner Products and Norms

Geometric notions such as angle, length, and perpendicularity can be viewed more abstractly and generally through our study of the *inner product*.

> **Definition 6.1.1** (Inner Product). Let $V$ be a vector space over $F$. An **inner product** on $V$ is a function that assigns, to every ordered pair of vectors $x$ and $y$ in $V$, a scalar in $F$, denoted $\langle x, y \rangle$, such that for all $x, y, z \in V$ and all $c \in F$, the following hold:
>
> (a) $\langle x + z, y \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle + \langle z, y \rangle$.
>
> (b) $\langle cx, y \rangle = c \langle x, y \rangle$.
>
> (c) $\overline{\langle x, y \rangle} = \langle y, x \rangle$ where the bar denotes complex conjugation.
>
> (d) $\langle x, x \rangle > 0$ if $x \neq 0$.

- If $F = \mathbb{R}$, then (c) reduces to $\langle x, y \rangle = \langle y, x \rangle$.

- The first two parts (a) and (b) require linearity in the first component.

- Part (a) can be extended to an $n$ number of summations; that is, for every $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \in F$ and $y, v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n \in V$, then

$$\left\langle \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i v_i, y \right\rangle = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \langle v_i, y \rangle.$$

> **Example 6.1.1.** For $x = (a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)$ and $y = (b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n)$ in $F^n$, define
>
> $$\langle x, y \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \overline{b_i}.$$
>
> It is relatively straightforward to show conditions (a) through (d). Thus, the formula above

defines an inner product over $F^n$.

**Remark.** We can see the inner product above is just the **standard inner product** on $F^n$. If $F = \mathbb{R}$, then the conjugations are not needed and the product gets defined as $x \cdot y$ instead of $\langle x, y \rangle$.

The following is a non-example.

**Example 6.1.2.** Suppose we have any inner product $\langle x, y \rangle$ on a vector space $V$ and $r > 0$ defined by the rule

$$\langle x, y \rangle' = r \langle x, y \rangle.$$

Note that if $r \le 0$, then part (d) of our definition does not hold; that is, we have $\langle x, x \rangle = r \langle x, x \rangle < 0$.

**Example 6.1.3.** Let $V = C([0, 1])$ be the vector space of real-valued continuous functions on $[0, 1]$. For $f, g \in V$, define

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_0^1 f(t)g(t) \ dt$$

. We can see that parts (a) through (c) are relatively straightforward to show. To show (d), suppose $f \ne 0$. Then we have that $f^2$ is bounded away from zero on some subinterval of $[0, 1]$ (the notion of continuity from real analysis is used here), and hence we have

$$\langle f, f \rangle = \int_0^1 [f(t)]^2 \ dt > 0.$$

**Example 6.1.4** (Frobenius Inner Product)**.** Let $V = M_{n \times n}(F)$, and define

$$\langle A, B \rangle = \text{tr}(B^*A) \text{ for } A, B \in V$$

We will verify parts (a) and (d) of the definition of inner products. We leave parts (b) and (c) to the reader to prove. Let $A, B, C \in V$. Using Exercise 6 from Section 1.3, we have

$$\langle A + B, C \rangle = \text{tr}(C^*(A + B)) = \text{tr}(C^* + C^*B)$$
$$= \text{tr}(C^*A) + \text{tr}(C^*B) = \langle A, V \rangle + \langle B, C \rangle.$$

Also

$$\langle A, A \rangle = \text{tr}(A^*A) = \sum_{i=1}^n (A^*A)_{ii} = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^n (A^*)_{ik} A_{ki}$$
$$= \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^n \overline{A_{ki}} A_{ki} = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n |A_{ki}|^2.$$

If $A \ne O$, then $A_{ki} \ne 0$ for some $k$ and $i$. So we must have $\langle A, A \rangle > 0$.

**Definition 6.1.2** (Conjugate Transpose/Adjoint of a Matrix)**.** Let $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$. We define the **conjugate transpose** or **adjoint** of $A$ to be the $n \times m$ matrix $A^*$ such that $(A^*)_{ij} = \overline{A_{ji}}$ for all $i, j$.

**Example 6.1.5.** Let
$$A = \begin{pmatrix} i & 1+2i \\ 2 & 3+4i \end{pmatrix}.$$
Then
$$A^* = \begin{pmatrix} -i & 2 \\ 1-2i & 3-4i \end{pmatrix}.$$

- If $x, y \in F^n$ are column vectors, then $\langle x, y \rangle = y^* x$.

- If $F = \mathbb{R}$ and $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$, then the adjoint of $A$ is just its transpose.

**Definition 6.1.3** (Inner Product Spaces). A vector space over $F$ endowed with a specific inner product is called an **inner product space**. If $F = \mathbb{C}$, we call $V$ a **complex inner product space**, whereas if $F = \mathbb{R}$, we call $V$ a **real inner product space**.

**Remark.** If $V$ contains an inner product $\langle x, y \rangle$ and $W$ is a subspace of $V$, then $W$ contains the same inner product space with the same function $\langle x, y \rangle$ restricted to vectors $x, y \in W$.

- We will let $F^n$ be endowed with the Standard Inner Product as defined in the first example.

- In a similar manner, the vector space $M_{n \times n}(F)$ denotes the inner product space with the Frobenius Inner Product.

- Two distinct inner products defined on the same vector space can yield two different inner product spaces.

**Theorem 6.1.1** (Properties of Inner Product Spaces). Let $V$ be an inner product space. Then for $x, y, z \in V$ and $c \in F$, the following statements are true.

(a) $\langle x, y + z \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle + \langle x, z \rangle$.

(b) $\langle x, cy \rangle = \overline{c} \langle x, y \rangle$.

(c) $\langle x, 0 \rangle = \langle 0, x \rangle = 0$.

(d) $\langle x, x \rangle = 0$ if and only if $x = 0$.

(e) If $\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, z \rangle$ for all $x \in V$, then $y = z$.

**Proof.** (a) Let $x, y, z \in V$. By the linearity of the first component of the inner product, we must have
$$\begin{aligned} \langle x, y + z \rangle &= \overline{\langle y + z, x \rangle} \\ &= \overline{\langle y, x \rangle + \langle z, x \rangle} \\ &= \overline{\langle y, x \rangle} + \overline{\langle z, x \rangle} \\ &= \langle x, y \rangle + \langle x, z \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

(b) Let $x, y \in V$. Using the linearity of the first component, we must have

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle x, cy \rangle &= \overline{\langle cy, x \rangle} \\
&= \overline{c\langle y, x \rangle} \\
&= \bar{c}\overline{\langle y, x \rangle} \\
&= \bar{c}\langle x, y \rangle.
\end{aligned}$$

(c) Let $x \in V$. Note that for any $v \in V$, we have $0 \cdot v = 0$. So, we have

$$\langle x, 0 \rangle = \langle x, 0 \cdot v \rangle = \bar{0}\langle x, v \rangle = 0\langle x, v \rangle = 0$$

Likewise, we have

$$\langle 0, x \rangle = \langle 0 \cdot v, x \rangle = 0\langle v, x \rangle = 0.$$

Thus, we have $\langle x, 0 \rangle = \langle 0, x \rangle = 0$.

(d) Suppose $\langle x, x \rangle = 0$. By part (c), we can see that

$$\langle x, x \rangle = \langle 0, x \rangle = \langle x, 0 \rangle = 0$$

which is true if and only if $x = 0$. The converse is trivial.

(e) Suppose $\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, z \rangle$ for all $x \in V$. Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, z \rangle &\Rightarrow \langle x, y \rangle - \langle x, z \rangle = 0 \\
&\Rightarrow \langle 0, y - z \rangle = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

By part (c), we know that the above is true if and only if $y - z = 0$. So, we have $y = z$. ∎

- Notice how parts (a) and (b) of the theorem above demonstrates **conjugate linearity** of the second component.

- Generalizing the inner product to $\mathbb{R}^3$, we can see that

$$\sqrt{\langle x, x \rangle} = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}.$$

**Definition 6.1.4** (Norm/Length). Let $V$ be an inner product space. For $x \in V$, we define the **norm** or **length** of $x$ by $\|x\| = \sqrt{\langle x, x \rangle}$.

**Example 6.1.6.** Let $V = F^n$. If $x = (a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)$, then

$$\|x\| = \|(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)\| = \left[ \sum_{i=1}^{n} |a_i|^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

is the Euclidean definition of length. If $n = 1$, then we just have $\|a\| = a$.

**Theorem 6.1.2** (Properties of Norm). Let $V$ be an inner product space over $F$. Then for all $x, y \in V$ and $c \in F$, the following statements are true.

(a) $\|cx\| = |c| \cdot \|x\|$.

(b) $\|x\| = 0$ if and only if $x = 0$. In any case, $\|x\| \geq 0$.

(c) *(Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality)* $|\langle x, y \rangle| \leq \|x\| \cdot \|y\|$.

(d) *(Triangle Inequality)* $\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\|$.

**Proof.** (a) Let $x \in V$ and $c \in F$. Observe that

$$\|cx\| = \sqrt{\langle cx, cx \rangle} = \sqrt{c \langle x, cx \rangle}$$
$$= \sqrt{c\bar{c} \langle x, x \rangle}$$
$$= \sqrt{|c|^2 \cdot \langle x, x \rangle}$$
$$= |c| \cdot \sqrt{\langle x, x \rangle}$$
$$= |c| \cdot \|x\|.$$

Thus, we have that $\|cx\| = |c| \cdot \|x\|$.

(b) Let $x \in V$. Suppose $\|x\| = 0$. Then by definition of norm, we have

$$\|x\| = \sqrt{\langle x, x \rangle} = 0.$$

Squaring both sides, we can see that

$$\|x\|^2 = \langle x, x \rangle = 0.$$

This is true if and only if $x = 0$ by part (d) of Theorem 6.1. Conversely, suppose $x = 0$. So by definition of norm and part (d) of Theorem 6.1, we have

$$\sqrt{\langle x, x \rangle} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \|x\| = 0.$$

(c) Observe that if $y = 0$ then the result immediately follows. Suppose $y \neq 0$. Let $c \in F$. By part (d) of the definition of inner product, we have

$$0 \leq \|x - cy\|^2 = \langle x - cy, x - cy \rangle = \langle x, x - cy \rangle - c \langle y, x - cy \rangle$$
$$= \langle x, x \rangle - \bar{c} \langle x, y \rangle - c \langle y, x \rangle + c\bar{c} \langle y, y \rangle.$$

We can set

$$c = \frac{\langle x, y \rangle}{\langle y, y \rangle}.$$

Then observe that

$$\|x - cy\|^2 = \langle x, x \rangle - \bar{c} \langle x, y \rangle - c \langle y, x \rangle + c\bar{c} \langle y, y \rangle$$
$$= \|x\|^2 - \frac{2 \overline{\langle x, y \rangle} \langle x, y \rangle}{\|y\|^2} + \frac{\overline{\langle x, y \rangle} \langle x, y \rangle}{\|y\|^2}$$
$$= \|x\|^2 - \frac{|\langle x, y \rangle|^2}{\|y\|^2}.$$

Now, we can re-write the inequality we had at the beginning to obtain

$$0 \leq \frac{\|x\|^2 \|y\|^2 - |\langle x, y \rangle|^2}{\|y\|^2}.$$

Then multiplying $\|y\|^2$, adding $|\langle x, y \rangle|^2$, and then squaring both sides allows us to get

$$|\langle x, y \rangle| \leq \|x\| \|y\|$$

which is our desired result.

(d) Using the definition of norm, we have that

$$\begin{aligned}
\|x + y\|^2 &= \langle x + y, x + y \rangle = \langle x, x \rangle + \langle y, x \rangle + \langle x, y \rangle + \langle y, y \rangle \\
&= \|x\|^2 + 2\Re\langle x, y \rangle + \|y\|^2 \\
&\leq \|x\|^2 + 2|\langle x, y \rangle| + \|y\|^2 \\
&\leq \|x\|^2 + 2\|x\| \cdot \|y\| + \|y\|^2 \qquad \text{(Part (c))} \\
&= (\|x\| + \|y\|)^2
\end{aligned}$$

where $\Re\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle + \overline{\langle x, y \rangle}$ denotes the real part of the complex number $\langle x, y \rangle$. Thus, we have

$$\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\| \text{ for any } x, y \in V.$$

∎

**Definition 6.1.5** (Orthogonality of Vectors). Let $V$ be an inner product space. Vectors $x$ and $y$ in $V$ are **orthogonal (perpendicular)** if $\langle x, y \rangle = 0$. A subset $S$ of $V$ is **orthogonal** if any two distinct vectors in $S$ are orthogonal. A vector $x$ in $V$ is a **unit vector** if $\|x\| = 1$. Finally, a subset $S$ of $V$ is **orthonormal** if $S$ is orthogonal and consists entirely of unit vectors.

If $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots\}$, then $S$ is orthonormal if and only if $\langle v_i, v_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}$ where $\delta_{ij}$ denotes the Kronecker Delta.

**Definition 6.1.6** (Normalizing). The process of multiplying a nonzero vector by the reciprocal of its length is called **normalizing**.

**Example 6.1.7.** Suppose our inner product is defined by the space of continuous complex-valued functions defined on the interval $[0, 2\pi]$ with the inner product

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(t) \overline{g(t)} \, dt.$$

Define $S = \{f_n : n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ where $f_n(t) = e^{int}$, where $0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$ (recall that $e^{int} = \cos(nt) + i\sin(nt)$. We easily see that $S \subseteq H$. By using the property that $\overline{e^{it}} = e^{-it}$ for every real number $t$, we have, for $m \neq n$

$$\langle f_m, f_n \rangle = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} e^{imt} \overline{e^{int}} \, dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} e^{i(n-t)t} \, dt$$
$$= \frac{1}{2\pi(m-n)} e^{i(m-n)t} \Big|_0^{2\pi} = 0$$

and that

$$\langle f_n, f_n \rangle = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} e^{i(n-n)t} \, dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} 1 \, dt = 1.$$

From this, we can see that $\langle f_m, f_n \rangle = \delta_{mn}$.

## 6.2 The Orthogonalization Process and Orthogonal Complements

Just as bases are building blocks for vector spaces, orthonormal bases are the building blocks for inner product spaces.

> **Definition 6.2.1** (Orthonormal Bases for Inner Product Spaces). Let $V$ be an inner product space. A subset of $V$ is an **orthonormal basis** for $V$ if it is an ordered basis that is orthonormal.

The next theorem illustrates the importance of orthonormal sets and orthonormal bases in general.

> **Theorem 6.2.1.** Let $V$ be an inner product space and $S = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ be an orthogonal subset of $V$ consisting of nonzero vectors. If $y \in \text{span}(S)$, then
> $$y = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \frac{\langle y, v_i \rangle}{\|v_i\|^2} v_i.$$

**Proof.** Since $y \in \text{span}(S)$, we can find scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k$ such that

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i v_i.$$

Then for $1 \leq i \leq k$, we must have

$$\langle y, v_j \rangle = \Big\langle \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i v_i, v_j \Big\rangle = \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i \langle v_i, v_j \rangle = a_j \|v_j\|^2.$$

Thus, we have that

$$a_j = \frac{\langle y, v_j \rangle}{\|v_j\|^2}$$

which leads to our desired result

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \frac{\langle y, v_i \rangle}{\|v_i\|^2} v_i.$$

∎

> **Corollary.** If, in addition to the hypotheses of Theorem 6.3, $S$ is orthonormal and $y \in \text{span}(S)$, then
> $$y = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \langle y, v_i \rangle v_i.$$

**Proof.** Since $S$ is orthonormal, we have $\|v_i\| = 1$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$. So,

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \langle y, v_i \rangle v_i.$$

∎

**Corollary.** Let $V$ be an inner product space, and let $S$ be an orthogonal subset of $V$ consisting of nonzero vectors. Then $S$ is linearly independent.

**Proof.** Suppose that $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k \in S$ and

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i v_i = 0.$$

Observing that $y = 0$, we can apply Theorem 6.3 to obtain

$$a_j = \frac{\langle 0, v_j \rangle}{\|v_j\|^2} = 0$$

for all $j$. Thus, $S$ is linearly independent. ∎

- The main takeaway from these results is that if we have some orthonormal basis, we can solve for the coefficients by using the formula described in the first corollary.

- The second corollary tells us that vector space $H$ in the Section 6.1 contains an infinite linearly independent set and therefore is not a finite-dimensional vector space.

- Later in this section, we will prove that it is possible for finite-dimensional vector spaces to posses an orthonormal basis from a linearly independent set of vectors.

**Theorem 6.2.2** (Gram-Schmidt Process). Let $V$ be an inner product space and $S = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n\}$ be a linearly independent subset of $V$. Define $S' = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$, where $v_1 = w_1$ and

$$v_k = w_k - \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} \frac{\langle w_k, v_j \rangle}{\|v_j\|^2} v_j \quad \text{for } 2 \leq k \leq n. \tag{1}$$

Then $S'$ is an orthogonal set of nonzero vectors such that $\mathrm{span}(S') = \mathrm{span}(S)$.

**Proof.** The proof is by mathematical induction on $n$, the number of vectors in $S$. For $k = 1, 2, \ldots, n$, let $S_k = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_k\}$. If $n = 1$, then $v_1 = w_1$ where $v_1 = w_1 \neq 0$. So, $S'_1 = S_1$.

Now, suppose that $S'_{k-1} = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_{k-1}\}$ is an orthogonal set of nonzero vectors such that $\mathrm{span}(S'_k) = \mathrm{span}(S_k)$. Note that in this case $v_k$ is obtained from $S'_k$ by the property described in (1). If $v_k = 0$, then we get that $w_k \in \mathrm{span}(S'_{k-1}) = \mathrm{span}(S_{k-1})$. But this contradicts the assumption that $S_k$ is linearly independent.

Thus, for $1 \leq i \leq k - 1$ we have that (1) implies

$$\langle v_k, v_i \rangle = \langle w_k, v_i \rangle - \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} \frac{\langle w_k, v_j \rangle}{\|v_j\|^2} \langle v_j, v_i \rangle = \langle w_k, v_i \rangle - \frac{\langle w_k, v_i \rangle}{\|v_i\|^2} \|v_i\|^2 = 0$$

since $\langle v_j, v_i \rangle = 0$ if $i \neq j$ by our inductive hypothesis that $S'_{k-1}$ is orthogonal. Hence, we have that $S'_k$ is an orthogonal set of nonzero vectors. Furthermore, $\mathrm{span}(S'_k) \subseteq \mathrm{span}(S_k)$ by (1). But we also have that $S'_k$ is linearly independent set by corollary 2 to Theorem 6.3. Thus, $\dim(\mathrm{span}(S'_k)) = \dim(\mathrm{span}(S_k)) = k$ which implies that $\mathrm{span}(S'_k) = \mathrm{span}(S_k)$. ∎

**Theorem 6.2.3.** Let $V$ be a nonzero finite-dimensional inner product space. Then $V$ has an orthonormal basis $\beta$. Furthermore, if $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ and $x \in V$, then

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i.$$

**Proof.** Suppose that $V$ is a nonzero finite-dimensional inner product space. Let $\beta_0$ be an ordered basis for $V$. We can apply Theorem 6.4 to obtain an orthogonal set $\beta'$ of nonzero vectors such that

$$\text{span}(\beta') = \text{span}(\beta_0) = V.$$

Now, we obtain an orthonormal set $\beta$ that generates $V$ by normalizing each vector in $\beta'$. Since this set is also orthogonal, it is also linearly independent by the Second Corollary to Theorem 6.3. Thus, $\beta$ is an orthonormal basis for $V$. By the Corollary 1 to Theorem 6.3, we must have

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i$$

for any $x \in V$. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $V$ be a finite-dimensional inner product space with an orthonormal basis $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$. Let $T$ be a linear operator on $V$, and let $A = [T]_\beta$. Then for any $i$ and $j$, $A_{ij} = \langle T(v_j), v_i \rangle$.

**Proof.** Using Theorem 6.5, we must have

$$T(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \langle T(v_j), v_i \rangle v_i.$$

But this is just the matrix representation of $T$ so we have $A_{ij} = \langle T(v_j), v_i \rangle$. ∎

**Definition 6.2.2** (Fourier Coefficients). Let $\beta$ be an orthonormal subset (possibly infinite) of an inner product space $V$, and let $x \in V$. We define the **Fourier Coefficients** of $x$ relative to $\beta$ to be the scalars $\langle x, y \rangle$, where $y \in \beta$.

**Definition 6.2.3** (Orthogonal Complements). Let $S$ be a nonempty subset of an inner product space $V$. We define $S^\perp$ to be the set of all vectors in $V$ that are orthogonal to every vector in $S$; that is,

$$S^\perp = \{x \in V : \langle x, y \rangle = 0 \text{ for all } y \in S\}.$$

The set $S^\perp$ is called the **orthogonal complement** of $S$.

Note that this set is a subspace of $V$.

**Example 6.2.1.** For any inner product space $V$, we have $\{0\}^\perp = V$ and $V^\perp = \{0\}$.

**Example 6.2.2.** If $V = \mathbb{R}^3$ and $S = \{e_3\}$, then $S^\perp$ is just the $xy-$plane.

The most common situations in which Orthogonal Complements are used are problems dealing with finding the distance in $\mathbb{R}^3$ from some point $P$ in a plane $W$. If we let $y$ be the vector

determined by 0 and $P$, then the problem is reduced to finding a vector $u$ in $W$ such that the distance between $u$ and $y$ is as close as possible. This distance can be defined by the norm $\|y - u\|$.

If we set $z = y - u$, then we can see that this vector is orthogonal to every vector in $W$. Thus, we have $z \in W^\perp$. In the next theorem, we will present a way to finding this vector that minimizes the distance from another vector in the case that $W$ is a finite-dimensional subspace of an inner product space.

**Theorem 6.2.4.** Let $W$ be a finite-dimensional subspace of an inner product space $V$, and let $y \in V$. Then there exists unique vectors in $u \in W$ and $z \in W^\perp$ such that $y = u + z$. Furthermore, if $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ is an orthonormal basis for $W$, then

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \langle y, v_i \rangle v_i.$$

**Proof.** Let $y \in V$. Let $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ be an orthonormal basis for $W$, let $u$ be as defined in the preceding equation, and let $z = y - u$. We can see that $u \in W$ and that $y = u + z$. It suffices to show that $z \in W^\perp$; that is, $z$ is orthogonal to each $v_j$. For any $j$, we have

$$\langle z, v_j \rangle = \left\langle \left( y - \sum_{i=1}^{k} \langle y, v_i \rangle v_i \right), v_j \right\rangle = \langle y, v_j \rangle - \sum_{i=1}^{k} \langle y, v_i \rangle \langle v_i, v_j \rangle = \langle y, v_j \rangle - \langle y, v_j \rangle = 0.$$

Thus, $\langle z, v_j \rangle = 0$. Since each $v_j \neq 0$, we must have that $z = y - u = 0$. So, we get

$$u = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \langle y, v_i \rangle v_i$$

as our desired result.

For uniqueness, suppose that $y = u + z = u' + z'$, where $u' \in W$ and $z' \in W^\perp$. Thus, we must have

$$u - u' = z' - z \in W \cap W^\perp = \{0\}.$$

Thus, $u - u' = 0$ and $z - z' = 0$ implies $u = u'$ and $z = z'$. $\blacksquare$

**Corollary.** In the notation of Theorem 6.6, the vector $u$ is the unique vector in $W$ that is "closest" to $y$; that is, for any $x \in W$, $\|y - x\| \geq \|y - u\|$, and this inequality is an equality if and only if $x = u$.

**Proof.** In the notation of Theorem 6.6., we have $y = u + z$, where $z \in W^\perp$. Let $x \in W$. Then $u - x$ is orthogonal to $z$. By Exercise 10 of Section 6.1, we can see that

$$\|y - x\|^2 = \|(u + z) - x\|^2 = \|(u - x) + z\|^2$$
$$= \|u - x\|^2 + \|z\|^2$$
$$\geq \|z\|^2 = \|y - u\|^2$$

which is our desired inequality. Now, suppose that $\|y - x\| = \|y - u\|$. This implies that $\|u - x\| = 0$ and thus $u = x$ since $V$ is an inner product space. Conversely, $u = x$ immediately implies that $\|u - x\| = 0$ and consequently, the inequality above becomes an equality. So, $\|y - x\| = \|y - u\|$. $\blacksquare$

Just as we have seen with linearly independent subsets of finite-dimensional vector spaces

and how we can extend them to become bases, we can also extend orthonormal subsets of finite-dimensional inner product spaces into orthonormal bases for these spaces.

**Theorem 6.2.5.** Suppose that $S = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ is an orthonormal set in an $n-$dimensional inner product space $V$. Then

(a) $S$ can be extended to an orthonormal basis $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k, v_{k+1}, \ldots, v_n\}$ for $V$.

(b) If $W = \text{span}(S)$, then $S_1 = \{v_{k+1}, v_{k+2}, \ldots, v_n\}$ is an orthonormal basis for $W^\perp$ (using the preceding notation).

(c) If $W$ is any subspace of $V$, then $\dim(V) = \dim(W) + \dim(W^\perp)$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $S = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ is an orthonormal set.

(a) Since $V$ is an $n-$dimensional inner product space, we can use the Second Corollary to the Replacement Theorem to extend $S$ into a basis $S' = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k, w_{k+1}, \ldots, w_n\}$ for $V$. Now, we can use the Gram-Schmidt Process to $S'$. Thus, $S'$ is an orthogonal set that is also a basis for $V$ with the first $k$ vectors of $S'$ being part of $S$. The last $n - k$ can be normalized to produce an orthonormal set. Denote this set as $\beta$ and thus, we have an orthonormal set that is a basis for $V$.

(b) Note that $S_1$ is a subset of the basis $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k, v_{k+1}, \ldots, v_n\}$ and thus it is linearly independent. Furthermore, $S_1$ is a subset of $W^\perp$. It suffices to show that $S_1$ spans $W^\perp$. Observe that for any $x \in V$, our orthonormal basis gives us

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i.$$

If $x \in W^\perp$, then $\langle x, v_i \rangle = 0$ for $1 \leq i \leq k$ (this is because $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k \in V$ are not in $W^\perp$). Thus, we have

$$x = \sum_{i=k+1}^{n} \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i \in \text{span}(S_1)$$

which is our desired result.

(c) Let $W$ be a subspace of $V$. Since $V$ is a finite-dimensional inner product space, we also know that $W$ is a finite-dimensional by Theorem 1.11. Thus, it must contain an orthonormal basis $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$. Since $\dim(W) = k$ and $\dim(W^\perp)$, we have

$$\dim(V) = n = k + (n - k) = \dim(W) + \dim(W^\perp).$$

∎

## 6.3 The Adjoint Of A Linear Operator

### 6.3.1 Basics of the Adjoint

- The analog for conjugation of matrices or complex numbers for linear operators is called the *adjoint* of said operator.

- The matrix representation of this kind of operator is represented by $[T]_\beta^*$ where $\beta$ is an orthonormal basis for $V$.

Let $V$ be an inner product space, and let $y \in V$. The function $g : V \to F$ defined by $g(x) = \langle x, y \rangle$ is linear. If $V$ is finite-dimensional, then every linear transformation is of the form of $g$.

**Theorem 6.3.1.** Let $V$ be a finite-dimensional inner product space over $F$, and let $g : V \to F$ be a linear transformation. Then there exists a unique vector $y \in V$ such that $g(x) = \langle x, y \rangle$ for all $x \in V$.

**Proof.** Let $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ be an orthonormal basis for $V$. If $y \in V$, then

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \overline{g(v_i)} v_i.$$

Define $h : V \to F$ by $h(x) = \langle x, y \rangle$. We can easily show that this function is linear. For $1 \leq j \leq n$, we have

$$h(v_j) = \langle v_j, y \rangle = \left\langle v_j, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \overline{g(v_i)} v_i \right\rangle$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} g(v_i) \langle v_j, v_i \rangle$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} g(v_i) \delta_{ji}$$

$$= g(v_j).$$

Since $h(v_j) = g(v_j)$ for all $1 \leq j \leq n$, we have $h = g$ by Corollary to Theorem 2.6. Now, suppose $y' \in V$ such that $g(x) = \langle x, y' \rangle$ for all $x$. Then $\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, y' \rangle$ for all $x$. By Theorem 6.1, we have $y = y'$. ∎

**Theorem 6.3.2.** Let $V$ be a finite-dimensional inner product space, and let $T$ be a linear operator on $V$. Then there exists a unique function $T^* : V \to V$ such that $\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle$ for all $x, y \in V$. Furthermore, $T^*$ is linear.

**Proof.** Let $y \in V$. Define $g : V \to F$ by $g(x) = \langle T(x), y \rangle$ for all $x \in V$. Our first goal is to show that $g$ is linear. Let $x_1, x_2 \in V$ and $c \in F$. Then

$$g(cx_1 + x_2) = \langle T(cx_1 + x_2), y \rangle = \langle cT(x_1) + T(x_2), y \rangle$$
$$= c\langle T(x_1), y \rangle + \langle T(x_2), y \rangle = cg(x_1) + g(x_2).$$

Hence, $g$ is linear.

Using Theorem 6.8, we can obtain a unique vector $y' \in V$ such that $g(x) = \langle x, y' \rangle$. Thus, $\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, y' \rangle$ for all $x \in V$. Now, define $T^* : V \to V$ by $T^*(y) = y'$. So, we have $\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle$. Next, we will show that $T^*$ is linear. Let $y_1, y_2 \in V$ and $c \in F$. Then for any $x \in V$, we have

$$\langle x, T^*(cy_1 + y_2) \rangle = \langle T(x), cy_1 + y_2 \rangle$$
$$= \bar{c}\langle T(x), y_1 \rangle + \langle T(x), y_2 \rangle$$
$$= \bar{c}\langle x, T^*(y_1) \rangle + \langle x, T^*(y_2) \rangle$$
$$= \langle x, cT^*(y_1) + T^*(y_2) \rangle.$$

By Theorem 6.1 (e), $T^*$ is linear for all $x \in V$. Finally, we need to show that $T^*$ is unique. Suppose that $U : V \to V$ is linear and that is satisfies $\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, U(y) \rangle$ for all $x, y \in V$. Then $\langle x, T^*(y) \rangle = \langle x, U(y) \rangle$ for all $x, y \in V$ and thus $T^* = U$ by Theorem 6.1 (e) again. ∎

- This new linear operator denoted by $T^*$ is the **adjoint** of the operator $T$.

- We can see from the proof above that $T^*$ is the unique operator on $V$ satisfying the property mentioned above.

- Furthermore,
$$\langle x, T(y) \rangle = \overline{\langle T(y), x \rangle} = \overline{\langle y, T^*(x) \rangle} = \langle T^*(x), y \rangle$$
for all $x, y \in V$. So, $\langle x, T(y) \rangle = \langle T^*(x), y \rangle$ for all $x, y \in V$.

- The property above can be described as adding a $*$ to $T$ when shifting its position in the inner product.

- Also, the existence of a adjoint of a linear operator $T$ is not guaranteed under an infinite-dimensional vector space $V$.

**Theorem 6.3.3.** Let $V$ be a finite-dimensional inner product space, and let $\beta$ be an orthonormal basis for $V$. If $T$ is a linear operator on $V$, then

$$[T^*]_\beta = [T]_\beta^*.$$

**Proof.** Let $A = [T]_\beta$ and $B = [T^*]_\beta$, and $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$. Then from the corollary to Theorem 6.5, we have

$$B_{ij} = \langle T^*(v_j), v_i \rangle = \overline{\langle v_i, T^*(v_j) \rangle} = \overline{\langle T(v_i), v_j \rangle} = \overline{A_{ji}} = (A^*)_{ij}.$$

Hence, $B = A^*$ where $A_{ij} = \langle T(v_j), v_i \rangle$. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $A$ be an $n \times n$ matrix. Then $L_{A^*} = (L_A)^*$.

**Proof.** Suppose $\beta$ is the standard ordered basis for $F^n$. Using Theorem 2.16, we have $[L_A]_\beta = A$. So,
$$[(L_A)^*]_\beta = [L_A]_\beta^* = A^* = [L_A^*]_\beta.$$
Thus, we conclude that $(L_A)^* = L_{A^*}$. ∎

**Theorem 6.3.4.** Let $V$ be an inner product space, and let $T$ and $U$ be linear operators on $V$ whose adjoints exist. Then

(a) $T + U$ has an adjoint, and $(T + U)^* = T^* + U^*$.

(b) $cT$ has an adjoint, and $(cT)^* = \bar{c}T^*$ for any $c \in F$.

(c) $TU$ has an adjoint, and $(TU)^* = U^*T^*$.

(d) $T^*$ has an adjoint, and $(T^*)^* = T$.

(e) $I$ has an adjoint, and $I^* = I$.

**Proof.** Let $T$ and $U$ be linear operators on $V$ whose adjoints exist. Let $x, y \in V$ and $c \in F$. Then

(a) Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle x, (T+U)^*(y) \rangle &= \langle (T+U)(x), y \rangle \\
&= \langle T(x) + U(x), y \rangle \\
&= \langle T(x), y \rangle + \langle U(x), y \rangle \\
&= \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle + \langle x, U^*(y) \rangle \\
&= \langle x, (T^* + U^*)(y) \rangle,
\end{aligned}
$$

we have $(T+U)^* = T^* + U^*$.

(b) Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle x, (cT)^*(y) \rangle &= \langle cT(x), y \rangle \\
&= c\langle T(x), y \rangle \\
&= c\langle x, T^*(y) \rangle \\
&= \langle x, \bar{c}T^*(y) \rangle,
\end{aligned}
$$

we must have $(cT)^* = \bar{c}T^*$.

(c) Observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle x, (TU)^*(y) \rangle &= \langle (TU)(x), y \rangle \\
&= \langle T(U(x)), y \rangle \\
&= \langle U(x), T^*(y) \rangle \\
&= \langle x, U^*(T^*(y)) \rangle \\
&= \langle x, (U^*T^*)(y) \rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

which implies that $(TU)^* = U^*T^*$.

(d) Since

$$
\langle x, (T^*)^*(y) \rangle = \langle T^*(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T(y) \rangle.
$$

1. (e) Observe that

$$
\langle x, I^*(y) \rangle = \langle I(x), y \rangle = \langle x, I(y) \rangle
$$

∎

**Corollary.** Let $A$ and $B$ be $n \times n$ matrices. Then

(a) $(A+B)^* = A^* + B^*$.

(b) $(cA)^* = \bar{c}A^*$ for all $c \in F$.

(c) $(AB)^* = B^*A^*$.

(d) $A^{**} = A$.

(e) $I^* = I$.

**Proof.** Let $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ and let $\beta$ be an orthonormal basis for $V = F^n$. Using Theorem 6.10, we have

(a)

$$(A + B)^* = [L_{A+B}]_\beta^* = [L_A^* + L_B^*]_\beta$$
$$= [L_A^*]_\beta + [L_B^*]_\beta$$
$$= [L_A]_\beta^* + [L_B]_\beta^*$$
$$= A^* + B^*.$$

(b) Let $c \in F$. Then

$$(cA)^* = [L_{cA}]_\beta^* = [cL_A^*]_\beta$$
$$= c[L_A^*]_\beta$$
$$= c[L_A]_\beta^*$$
$$= cA^*.$$

(c) Using Theorem 2.15, we have

$$(AB)^* = [L_{AB}]_\beta^* = [L_{AB}^*]_\beta$$
$$= [(L_A L_B)^*]_\beta$$
$$= [L_B^* L_A^*]_\beta$$
$$= [L_B^*]_\beta [L_A^*]_\beta$$
$$= [L_B]_\beta^* [L_A]_\beta^*$$
$$= B^* A^*.$$

(d) Since $L_A^{**} = L_A$, we must have $A^{**} = A$.

∎

- The results in Theorem 6.10 were used extensively to prove the corollary above.

- An alternative approach and one that works for $m \times n$ matrices is to apply the definition of the conjugate transpose.

### 6.3.2 Least Squares Approximation

The following results are dedicated towards solving the problem of finding the best possible fit for data collected that will minimize the error between the expected data and the predicted data. That is, we will try to find constants $c$ and $d$ such that

$$E = \sum_{i=1}^{m} (y_i - ct_i - d)^2$$

will be minimized.

**Lemma 6.3.1.** Let $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$, $x \in F^n$, and $y \in F^m$. Then

$$\langle Ax, y \rangle_m = \langle x, A^* y \rangle_n.$$

**Proof.** We can use a generalization of the Corollary to Theorem 6.11 to write

$$\langle Ax, y \rangle_m = y^*(Ax) = (y^*A)x = (A^*y)^*x = \langle x, A^*y \rangle_n.$$

∎

**Lemma 6.3.2.** Let $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$. Then $\operatorname{rank}(A^*A) = \operatorname{rank}(A)$.

**Proof.** By the Dimension Theorem, we need only show that, for $x \in F^n$, we have $A^*Ax = 0$ if and only if $Ax = 0$. Clearly, $Ax = 0$ implies that $A^*Ax = 0$. So, assume that $A^*Ax = 0$. So,

$$0 = \langle A^*Ax, x \rangle_n = \langle Ax, A^{**}x \rangle_m = \langle Ax, Ax \rangle_m.$$

Thus, we have $Ax = 0$. ∎

Let $A$ be an $m \times n$ matrix and $y \in F^m$. Define

$$W = \{Ax : x \in F^n\} = R(L_A).$$

Using the Corollary to Theorem 6.6, there exists a unique vector $x_0 \in F^n$ that is closest to $y$; that is, $\|Ax_0 - y\| \leq \|Ax - y\|$ for all $x \in F^n$. Thus, we say that $x_0$ has the property that $E = \|Ax_0 - y\|$ is minimal.

We can develop a practical method of finding the minimum by using Theorem 6.6 and its corollary. Thus, we find that $Ax_0 - y \in W^\perp$, and so $\langle Ax, Ax_0 - y \rangle_m = 0$ for all $x \in F^n$. Hence, $A^*(Ax_0 - y) = 0$. To find a solution to this equation, we must solve $A^*Ax = A^*y$. If we assume the result from the second lemma above, we get that $x_0 = (A^*A)^{-1}A^*y$.

**Theorem 6.3.5** (Minimal Solution). Let $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$ and $y \in F^m$. Then there exists $x_0 \in F^n$ such that $(A^*A)x_0 = A^*y$ and $\|Ax_0 - y\| \leq \|Ax - y\|$ for all $x \in F^n$. Furthermore, if $\operatorname{rank}(A) = n$, then $x_0 = (A^*A)^{-1}A^*y$.

## 6.4 Normal and Self-Adjoint Operators

### 6.4.1 Eigenvectors and Orthonormal Bases

We begin this section by developing some preliminary results that allows us to find an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors for an inner product space $V$ such that a linear operator $T$ is diagonalizable.

**Lemma 6.4.1.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space $V$. If $T$ has an eigenvector, then so does $T^*$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $v$ is an eigenvector of $T$ with the corresponding eigenvalue $\lambda$. Then for any $x \in V$, we have

$$0 = \langle 0, x \rangle = \langle (T - \lambda I)(v), x \rangle = \langle v, (T - \lambda I)^*(x) \rangle = \langle v, (T^* - \overline{\lambda}I)(x) \rangle.$$

Hence, we find that $v$ is orthogonal to the range of $T^* - \overline{\lambda}I$. So $T^* - \overline{\lambda}I$ is not surjective

(Because $v \notin R(T^* - \overline{\lambda}I)$) and hence is not injective. Thus, $T^* - \overline{\lambda}I$ has a nonzero null space, and any nonzero vector in this null space is an eigenvector of $T^*$ with corresponding eigenvalue $\overline{\lambda}$. ∎

**Definition 6.4.1** (T-Invariance). Let $V$ be a vector space, and let $T : V \to V$ be linear. As subspace $W$ of $V$ is said to be $T-$**invariant** if $T(x) \in W$ for every $x \in W$, that is, $T(W) \subseteq W$. If $W$ is $T-$invariant, we define the **restriction of $T$ on $W$** to be the function $T_W : W \to W$ defined by $T_W(x) = T(x)$ for all $x \in W$.

**Theorem 6.4.1** (Schur). Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space $V$. Suppose that the characteristic polynomial of $T$ splits. Then there exists an orthonormal basis $\gamma$ for $V$ such that the matrix $[T]_\gamma$ is upper triangular.

**Proof.** By Exercise 12(a) of Section 5.2, there exists an ordered basis $\beta = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n\}$ for $V$ such that $[T]_\beta$ is upper triangular. Now apply the Gram-Schmidt process to $\beta$ to obtain an orthogonal basis $\beta' = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ for $V$. For each $k$, $1 \le k \le n$, let

$$S_k = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_k\} \text{ and } S_k' = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}.$$

From the result of Theorem 6.4, $\text{span}(S_k) = \text{span}(S_k')$ for all $k$. Using Exercise 12 from Section 2.2, we have $T(w_k) \in \text{span}(S_k)$ for all $k$. Thus, $[T]_{\beta'}$ is upper triangular by the same exercise. Finally, let $z_i = \frac{1}{\|v_i\|}v_i$ for all $1 \le i \le n$ and $\gamma = \{z_1, z_2, \ldots, z_n\}$. Thus, $\gamma$ is an orthonormal basis for $V$, and $[T]_\gamma$ is upper triangular. ∎

- If such a basis $\beta$ exists for a linear operator $T$, then $[T^*]_\beta = [T]_\beta^*$ is a diagonal.

- Furthermore, we find that $T$ and $T^*$ commute.

- Thus, if $V$ contains an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of $T$, then $TT^* = T^*T$.

**Definition 6.4.2** (Normal). Let $V$ be an inner product space, and let $T$ be a linear operator on $V$. We say that $T$ is **normal** if $TT^* = T^*T$. An $n \times n$ real or complex matrix $A$ is **normal** if $AA^* = A^*A$.

**Remark.** From Theorem 6.10, $T$ is normal if and only if $[T]_\beta$ is normal.

**Theorem 6.4.2.** Let $V$ be an inner product space, and let $T$ be a normal operator on $V$. Then the following statements are true.

(a) $\|T(x)\| = \|T^*(x)\|$ for all $x \in V$.

(b) $T - cI$ is normal for every $c \in F$.

(c) If $x$ is an eigenvector of $T$ corresponding to eigenvalue $\lambda$, then $x$ is also an eigenvector of $T^*$ corresponding to eigenvalue $\overline{\lambda}$. That is, if $T(x) = \lambda x$, then $T^*(x) = \overline{\lambda}x$.

(d) If $\lambda_1$ and $\lambda_2$ are distinct eigenvectors of $T$ with corresponding eigenvectors $x_1$ and $x_2$, then $x_1$ and $x_2$ are orthogonal.

**Proof.** Suppose $T$ is normal.

(a) For any $x \in V$, we have

$$\|T(x)\|^2 = \langle T(x), T(x) \rangle = \langle T^*T(x), x \rangle$$
$$= \langle TT^*(x), x \rangle$$
$$= \langle T^*(x), T^*(x) \rangle$$
$$= \|T^*(x)\|^2.$$

(b) Suppose $c \in F$. Then we have

$$(T - cI)(T - cI)^* = (T - cI)(T^* - \bar{c}I)$$
$$= TT^* - cT^* - \bar{c}(IT) + c\bar{c}I$$
$$= T^*T - cT^* - \bar{c}(IT) + \bar{c}cI$$
$$= T^*(T - cI) - \bar{c}I(T - cI)$$
$$= (T - cI)(T^* - \bar{c}I)$$
$$= (T - cI)(T - cI)^*.$$

(c) Suppose $T(x) = \lambda x$. Thus, $(T - \lambda I)(x) = 0$ We will show that $T^*(x) = \bar{\lambda}x$. Using part (a), we have

$$0 = \|(T - \lambda I)(x)\| = \|(T - \lambda I)^*(x)\| = \|(T^* - \bar{\lambda}I)(x)\|.$$

Thus, $(T^* - \bar{\lambda}I)(x) = 0$ and so $x \in N(T^* - \bar{\lambda}I)$. Hence, $x$ is an eigenvector of $T^*$ corresponding to $\bar{\lambda}$.

(d) Let $\lambda_1$ and $\lambda_2$ be distinct eigenvalues of $T$ with corresponding eigenvectors $x_1$ and $x_2$. Consider the inner product $\lambda_1 \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle$. We want to show that $\langle x_1, x_2 \rangle = 0$. So, observe that

$$\lambda_1 \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle = \langle \lambda_1 x_1, x_2 \rangle = \langle T(x_1), x_2 \rangle$$
$$= \langle x_1, T^*(x_2) \rangle$$
$$= \langle x_1, \bar{\lambda} x_2 \rangle$$
$$= \lambda_2 \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle$$

Now, we have the equation

$$(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)\langle x_1, x_2 \rangle = 0 \tag{1}$$

Since $\lambda_1$ and $\lambda_2$ are distinct eigenvalues, we must have $\lambda_1 - \lambda_2 \neq 0$. So, (1) implies that $\langle x_1, x_2 \rangle = 0$.

$\blacksquare$

**Theorem 6.4.3.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional complex inner product space $V$. Then $T$ is normal if and only if there exists an orthonormal basis for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $T$ is normal. By the fundamental theorem of algebra, the characteristic polynomial of $T$ splits. By Schur's Theorem, there exists an orthonormal basis $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ for $V$ such that $[T]_\beta = A$ is upper triangular. We know that $v_1$ is an eigen-

vector of $T$ since $A$ is upper triangular. Assume that $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_{k-1}$ are eigenvectors of $T$. We want to show that $v_k$ is also an eigenvector of $T$. We proceed by mathematical induction to show this. Consider any $j < k$, and let $\lambda_j$ be the eigenvalue of $T$ corresponding to $v_j$. Using Theorem 6.15, $T^*(v_j) = \overline{\lambda_j} v_j$. Since $A$ is upper triangular, we have

$$T(v_k) = A_{1k}v_1 + A_{2k}v_2 + \cdots + A_{jk}v_j + \cdots + A_{kk}v_k.$$

Furthermore, the corollary to Theorem 6.5 implies that

$$A_{jk} = \langle T(v_k), v_j \rangle = \langle v_k, T^*(v_j) \rangle = \langle v_k, \overline{\lambda_j} v_j \rangle = \lambda_j \langle v_k, v_j \rangle = 0.$$

In order for $v_k$ to be an eigenvalue of $T$, we must have $j = k$. So, $A_{kk} = \lambda_k$ and thus $T(v_k) = \lambda_k v_k$.

Conversely, assume $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is an orthonormal basis for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$. Thus, $[T]_\beta$ is a diagonal matrix. Since diagonal matrices commute, we have

$$[TT^*]_\beta = [T]_\beta [T^*]_\beta = [T]_\beta [T]_\beta^* = [T]_\beta^* [T]_\beta = [T^*]_\beta [T]_\beta = [T^*T]_\beta$$

but, this implies that we have $TT^* = T^*T$. So, $T$ is normal. ∎

## 6.4.2 Self-Adjoints

**Definition 6.4.3** (Self-Adjoints). Let $T$ be a linear operator on an inner product space $V$. We say that $T$ is **self-adjoint** (or **Hermitian**) if $T = T^*$. An $n \times n$ real or complex matrix $A$ is **self-adjoint** (or **Hermitian**) if $A = A^*$.

- A result that follows immediately is that if $\beta$ is an orthonormal basis, then $T$ is self-adjoint if and only if $[T]_\beta$ is self-adjoint.

- If we are dealing with real matrices, say $A$, then we require $A$ to be symmetric.

- Linear Operators defined on a real inner product space contains real eigenvalues.

- Likewise, self-adjoint operators defined on complex inner product spaces have complex eigenvalues. Furthermore, the characteristic polynomial of every linear operator defined in this space is splits.

**Lemma 6.4.2.** Let $T$ be a self-adjoint operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space $V$. Then

(a) Every eigenvalue of $T$ is real.

(b) Suppose that $V$ is a real inner product space. Then the characteristic polynomial of $T$ splits.

**Proof.**   (a) Suppose that $T(x) = \lambda x$ for $x \neq 0$. Since $T$ is a self-adjoint linear operator, we know that $T$ must also be normal. Using Theorem 6.15 (c), we have

$$\lambda x = T(x) = T^*(x) = \overline{\lambda} x.$$

So, $\lambda = \overline{\lambda}$ and so $\lambda$ is a real eigenvalue.

(b) Let $n = \dim(V)$, and $\beta$ be an orthonormal basis for $V$, and $A = [T]_\beta$. Since $T$ is self-adjoint, then $A$ is also self-adjoint. Let $T_A$ be the linear operator on $C^n$ defined

by $T_A(x) = Ax$ for all $x \in C^n$. Note that we also have that $T_A$ is self-adjoint because $[T_A]_\gamma = A$, where $\gamma$ is the standard ordered basis for $C^n$. By part (a), the eigenvalues of $T_A$ are real. By the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra, the characteristic polynomial of $T_A$ splits into the form $t - \lambda$. Since $\lambda$ is real, the characteristic polynomial splits over $\mathbb{R}$. Note that $T_A$ contains the same characteristic polynomial as $A$, which has the same characteristic polynomial as $T$. Thus, the characteristic polynomial of $T$ splits. $\blacksquare$

**Theorem 6.4.4.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional real inner product space $V$. Then $T$ is self-adjoint if and only if there exists an orthonormal basis $\beta$ for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $T$ is self-adjoint. By the lemma, we can apply Schur's Theorem to obtain an orthonormal basis $\beta$ for $V$ such that the matrix $A = [T]_\beta$ is upper triangular. Observe that

$$A^* = [T]_\beta^* = [T^*]_\beta = [T]_\beta = A.$$

Since $\beta$ is an orthonormal basis, $A$ must be a diagonal matrix. Thus, $\beta$ must consist of eigenvectors of $T$.

Conversely, suppose there exists an orthonormal basis $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ consisting of eigenvectors. Thus, $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ are eigenvectors of $V$ corresponding to eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n \in \mathbb{R}$. Since $\beta$ is an orthonormal basis for $V$, $T$ is normal by Theorem 6.16. Furthermore, $[T]_\beta$ is a diagonal matrix and so is $[T]_\beta^* = [T^*]_\beta$. Thus, by part (c) of Theorem 6.15, we can see that

$$T(v_j) = \lambda_j v_j = \overline{\lambda_j} v_j = T^*(v_j).$$

Thus, $T = T^*$ and so we conclude that $T$ is self-adjoint. $\blacksquare$

## 6.5 Unitary and Orthogonal Operators and Their Matrices

### 6.5.1 Unitary and Orthogonal Operators

- In the past chapters, we were concerned with how operations and structures are preserved with functions preserving the operations concerned with vector spaces and isomorphisms preserving the structure of the space itself.

- In this section, we will develop the notion of what it means to preserve "length"; that is, the norm of some vector space.

**Definition 6.5.1** (Unitary Operators and Orthogonal Operators)**.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space $V$ (over $F$). If $\|T(x)\| = \|x\|$ for all $x \in V$, we call $T$ a **unitary operator** if $F = \mathbb{C}$ and an **othogonal operator** if $F = \mathbb{R}$.

**Remark.** Under infinite-dimensional vector spaces, an operator that preserves the norm is injective, but not surjective. If it is also surjective, then we call that operator either a **unitary** or **orthogonal operator**.

**Lemma 6.5.1.** Let $U$ be a self-adjoint operator on an inner product space $V$, and suppose that $\langle x, U(x) \rangle = 0$ for all $x \in V$. Then $U = T_0$.

**Proof.** For any $x \in V$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 &= \langle x + U(x), U(x + U(x)) \rangle \\
&= \langle x + U(x), U(x) + U^2(x) \rangle \\
&= \langle x, U(x) \rangle + \langle x, U^2(x) \rangle + \langle U(x), U(x) \rangle + \langle U(x), U^2(x) \rangle \\
&= 0 + \langle x, U^2(x) \rangle + \langle U(x), U(x) \rangle + 0 \\
&= \langle x, U^*U(x) \rangle + \|U(x)\|^2 \\
&= \langle U(x), u(x) \rangle + \|U(x)\|^2 \\
&= 2\|U(x)\|^2.
\end{aligned}
$$

So, for any $x \in V$, we have $\|U(x)\| = 0$ which implies that $U = T_0$. ∎

**Theorem 6.5.1.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space $V$. Then the following statements are equivalent.

(a) $T^*T = I$.

(b) $TT^* = I$.

(c) $\langle T(x), T(y) \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle$ for all $x, y \in V$.

(d) If $\beta$ is an orthonormal basis for $V$, then $T(\beta)$ is an orthonormal basis for $V$.

(e) There exists an orthonormal basis $\beta$ for $V$ such that $T(\beta)$ is an orthonormal basis for $V$.

(f) $\|T(x)\| = \|x\|$ for all $x \in V$.

**Proof.** • We will show that part (a) implies part (b). Suppose $T^*T = I$. By Theorem 6.10, we have

$$
I_n = [T^*T]_\beta = [T^*]_\beta [T]_\beta = [T]_\beta^* [T]_\beta.
$$

Let $A = [T]_\beta^*$ and $B = [T]_\beta$. Since $A$ and $B$ are invertible and that $A = B^{-1}$ and $B = A^{-1}$, we must have

$$
I_n = BA = [T]_\beta [T]_\beta^* = [T]_\beta [T^*]_\beta = [TT^*]_\beta.
$$

Thus, we have $TT^* = I$.

• Next, we wills show that part (b) implies part (c). Let $x, y \in V$. Using part (b), we find that

$$
\langle x, y \rangle = \langle T^*T(x), y \rangle = \langle T(x), T(y) \rangle
$$

which is our desired result.

• Next, let us show that part (c) implies part (d). Let $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ be an orthonormal basis for $V$. First, we will show that $T(\beta)$ is an orthonormal subset of $V$. Using part (c), we find that

$$
\langle T(v_i), T(v_j) \rangle = \langle v_i, v_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}
$$

for all $i$ and $j$. Thus, $T(\beta)$ is orthonormal. By the 2nd Corollary to Theorem 6.3, $T(\beta)$ must also be linearly independent. Clearly, $T(\beta) \subseteq V$. Let $v \in V$ that is not in $T(\beta)$. Then by Theorem 1.7, adjoining $v \in V$ to $\beta$ generates a linearly dependent set which implies $v \in \text{span}(T(\beta))$. So, $T(\beta)$ spans $V$.

- Clearly, (d) implies (e).

- Next, we prove that (e) implies (f). Let $x \in V$, and let $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$. Thus,

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i v_i$$

where $a_i = \langle x, v_i \rangle$. Then observe that

$$\|x\|^2 = \Big\| \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i v_i \Big\|^2 = \Big\langle \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i v_i, \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j v_j \Big\rangle$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \sum_{j=1}^{n} \overline{a_j} \langle v_i, v_j \rangle$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \sum_{j=1}^{n} \overline{a_j} \langle T(v_i), T(v_j) \rangle$$

$$= \Big\langle \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i T(v_i), \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j T(v_j) \Big\rangle$$

$$= \Big\langle T\Big( \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i v_i \Big), T\Big( \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j v_j \Big) \Big\rangle$$

$$= \langle T(x), T(x) \rangle$$

$$= \|T(x)\|^2.$$

Therefore, we have $\|x\| = \|T(x)\|$.

- Finally, let us show that part (f) implies part (a). Let $x \in V$. Then we have

$$\langle x, x \rangle = \|x\|^2 = \|T(x)\|^2 = \langle T(x), T(x) \rangle = \langle x, T^*T(x) \rangle.$$

So, we have

$$\langle x, (T^*T - I)(x) \rangle = 0$$

and thus $T^*T - I = T_0$ by lemma which subsequently implies that $T^*T = I$. ∎

Note that the conditions above are all equivalent to the definition of unitary or orthogonal operators.

**Corollary.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional real inner product space $V$. Then $V$ has an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of $T$ with corresponding eigenvalues of absolute value 1 if and only if $T$ is both self-adjoint and orthogonal.

**Proof.** Suppose $V$ has an orthonormal basis $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ consisting of eigenvectors corresponding to eigenvalues $|\lambda_i| = 1$ for each $i$. We need to show that $T$ is self-adjoint and orthogonal. By Theorem 6.17, $T$ is self-adjoint. Thus, $T$ is a diagonalizable linear operator;

that is, $T(v_i) = \lambda_i v_i$ for all $i$. Since $|\lambda_i| = 1$ for all $i$, we must have

$$T^*T(v_i) = T(T(v_i)) = T(\lambda_i v_i) = \lambda_i T(v_i) = \lambda_i^2 v_i = v_i.$$

So, $T^*T = I$ and thus $T$ is orthogonal. Conversely, suppose $T$ is self-adjoint and normal. Then $V$ contains an orthonormal basis $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ with eigenvectors corresponding to the eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n$, by Theorem 6.17. We need to show that $|\lambda_i| = 1$ for all $i$. Since $T$ is normal, we must have

$$
\begin{aligned}
|\lambda_i|^2 \langle v_i, v_i \rangle = |\lambda_i|^2 \|v_i\|^2 &= \|\lambda_i v_i\|^2 \\
&= \|T(v_i)\|^2 \\
&= \langle v_i, T^*T(v_i) \rangle \\
&= \langle v_i, v_i \rangle.
\end{aligned}
$$

Since each $v_i \neq 0$, $\langle v_i, v_i \rangle > 0$ and so

$$|\lambda_i|^2 \|v_i\|^2 = \|v_i\|^2 \Rightarrow |\lambda_i| = 1 \text{ for all } i$$

which is our desired result. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $T$ be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional complex inner product space $V$. Then $V$ has an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of $T$ with corresponding eigenvalues of absolute value 1 if and only if $T$ is both self-adjoint and unitary.

**Proof.** The proof is similar to the proof of corollary 1. ∎

**Definition 6.5.2** (Reflection About $\mathbb{R}^2$). Let $L$ be a one-dimensional subspace of $\mathbb{R}^2$. We may view $L$ as a line in the plane through the origin. A linear operator $T$ on $\mathbb{R}^2$ is called a **reflection of $\mathbb{R}^2$ about** $L$ if $T(x) = x$ for all $x \in L$ and $T(x) = -x$ for all $x \in L^\perp$.

**Definition 6.5.3** (Orthogonal and Unitary Matrices). A square matrix $A$ is called an **orthogonal matrix** if $A^t A = A A^t = I$ and **unitary** if $A^* A = A A^* = I$.

- If given a real matrix $A$, we have $A^* = A^t$ where a real unitary matrix is also orthogonal in which case we just call $A$ orthogonal.

- Note that $AA^* = I$ is equivalent to the statement that the rows of $A$ form an orthonormal basis for $F^n$ since

$$\delta_{ij} = I_{ij} = (AA^*)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{ik}(A^*)_{kj} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{ik}\overline{A_{jk}}.$$

- The last term above represents the inner product of the $i$th and $j$th rows of $A$.

**Proposition 6.5.1.** Suppose $V$ is a finite-dimensional inner product space and $T$ is a linear operator on $V$. Then $T$ is unitary [orthogonal] if and only if $[T]_\beta$ is unitary [orthogonal].

**Proof.** Follows from the definition of unitary/orthogonal matrices and Theorem 6.10. ∎

- For complex normal [real symmetric] matrix $A$, there exists an orthonormal basis $\beta$ for $F^n$ consisting of eigenvectors of $A$. Thus, $A$ must be similar to a diagonal matrix $D$.

- The invertible matrix $Q$ is made up of basis vectors from $\beta$ such that $D = Q^{-1}AQ$. But this tells us that $Q$ is unitary since the columns of $Q$ are an orthonormal basis for $F^n$.

> **Definition 6.5.4** (Unitary/Orthogonal Equivalence)**.** Let $A$ be an $n \times n$ matrix with [real/complex] entries. We call $A$ **unitarily equivalent** [**orthogonally equivalent**] to $B$ if there exists a unitary [orthogonal] matrix $P$ such that $A = P^*BP$.

> **Theorem 6.5.2.** Let $A$ be a complex $n \times n$ matrix. Then $A$ is normal if and only if $A$ is unitarily equivalent to a diagonal matrix.

> **Proof.** Note that the preceding paragraph already proved the forwards direction, so we will only have to show the backwards direction. Suppose $A$ is unitarily equivalent to a diagonal matrix, and call this matrix $D$. Then there exists a unitary matrix $P$ such that $A = P^*DP$. We need to show that $A$ is normal; that is, $A^*A = AA^*$. Note that diagonal matrices are also normal, so $D^*D = DD^*$. Thus, we have
>
> $$\begin{aligned} A^*A &= (P^*(DP))^*(P^*DP) \\ &= ((DP)^*P)(P^*DP) \\ &= (P^*D^*P)(P^*DP) \\ &= P^*D^*DP && (D^*D = DD^*) \\ &= P^*DD^*P \\ &= P^*DD^*P \\ &= P^*DPP^*D^*P \\ &= (P^*DP)((DP)^*P) \\ &= (P^*DP)(P^*DP) \\ &= AA^*. \end{aligned}$$
>
> Thus, $A$ is normal.
>
> $\blacksquare$

> **Theorem 6.5.3.** Let $A$ be a real $n \times n$ matrix. Then $A$ is symmetric if and only if $A$ is orthogonally equivalent to a real diagonal matrix.

> **Proof.** The proof is similar to the proof to the theorem above. Just replace the adjoints with transposes. $\blacksquare$

Using Schur's Theorem, the next result immediately follows. In fact, the theorem below is just the matrix form of Schur's Theorem.

> **Theorem 6.5.4** (Schur)**.** Let $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ be a matrix whose characteristic polynomial splits over $F$.
>
> (a) If $F = C$, then $A$ is unitarily equivalent to a complex upper triangular matrix.
>
> (b) If $F = \mathbb{R}$, then $A$ is orthogonally equivalent to a real upper triangular matrix.

### 6.5.2 Rigid Motions

One application of unitary and orthogonal operators is the notion of *rigid motions* and how, in a finite-dimensional inner product space, transforming a figure does alter its shape. A key requirement is the transformation to preserve distances.

> **Definition 6.5.5** (Rigid Motion). Let $V$ be a real inner product space. A function $f : V \to V$ is called a **rigid motion** if
> $$\|f(x) - f(y)\| = \|x - y\|$$
> for all $x, y \in V$.

- Any orthogonal operator is a rigid motion.

- Translations are another class of rigid motions.

> **Definition 6.5.6** (Translations). A function $g : V \to V$, where $V$ is a real inner product space, is called a **translation** if there exists a vector $v_0 \in V$ such that $g(x) = x + v_0$ for all $x \in V$. We call that $g$ is a *translation by $v_0$*.

On a real finite-dimensional inner product space, an orthogonal operator followed by a translation is also a rigid motion.

> **Theorem 6.5.5.** Let $f : V \to V$ be a rigid motion on a finite-dimensional real inner product space $V$. Then there exists a unique orthogonal operator $T$ on $V$ and a unique translation $g$ on $V$ such that $f = g \circ T$.

- An orthogonal operator is a translation by the zero vector $O$.

- Any translation is characterized as the identity operator.

> **Proof.** Let $T : V \to V$ be defined by
> $$T(x) = f(x) - f(0)$$
> for all $x \in V$. $\blacksquare$

## 6.6 Orthogonal Projections and The Spectral Theorem

- In this section, we will prove that any operator $T$ on a finite-dimensional inner product space $V$ can be written as a linear combination of orthogonal projections $T_1, T_2, \ldots, T_k$ with coefficients $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$ being the distinct eigenvalues of $T$.

- In order to prove this result, we must assume knowledge of projections which is introduced at the end of section 1.3, and continued further in sections 2.1 and 5.2 (Look back to the exercises in these sections).

> **Definition 6.6.1** (Projections). Let $W_1$ and $W_2$ be subspaces of $V$ such that $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$. Suppose $T$ is a linear operator on $V$. We call $T$ on $V$ a **projection on $W_1$ along $W_2$** if,

whenever $x = x_1 + x_2$, with $x_1 \in W_1$ and $x_2 \in W_2$, we have $T(x) = x_1$.

**Definition 6.6.2** (Orthogonal Projection). Let $V$ be an inner product space, and let $T : V \to V$ be a projection. We say that $T$ is an **orthogonal projection** if $R(T)^\perp = N(T)$ and $N(T)^\perp = R(T)$.

**Remark.** By Exercise 13(c) of Section 6.2, if $V$ is finite-dimensional, we need only assume the one of equalities in the definition holds. Suppose $R(T)^\perp = N(T)$, then to get the other equation, we just have to write

$$R(T) = (R(T)^\perp)^\perp = N(T)^\perp.$$

- If we assume that $W$ is a finite-dimensional subspace of an inner product space $V$, then we can define a function $T : V \to V$ by $T(y) = u$ that is an orthogonal projection. We can take this a step further by showing that it is unique to $W$.

- We call this projection as the **orthogonal projection** of $V$ on $W$.

**Theorem 6.6.1.** Let $V$ be an inner product space, and let $T$ be a linear operator on $V$. Then $T$ is an orthogonal projection if and only if $T$ has an adjoint $T^*$ and $T^2 = T = T^*$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $T$ is an orthogonal projection. Since $T$ is a projection, we must have $T^2 = T$ by Exercise 17 of Section 2.3. Thus, we need only show that $T^*$ exists and $T = T^*$. Note that $V = R(T) \oplus N(T)$ and $R(T)^\perp = N(T)$. Let $x, y \in V$. Thus, we have $x = x_1 + x_2$ and $y = y_1 + y_2$ with $x_1, y_1 \in R(T)$ and $x_2, y_2 \in N(T)$. To show that $T^* = T$, it suffices to show that $\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T(y) \rangle$. Working with the left-hand side, we have

$$\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x_1, y_1 + y_2 \rangle$$
$$= \langle x_1, y_1 \rangle + \langle x_1, y_2 \rangle.$$

Since $N(T) = R(T)^\perp$ and $y_2 \in N(T)$, the second term cancels out and we are left with $\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x_1, y_1 \rangle$. Likewise, $x_2 \in N(T)$ which implies $\langle x_2, y_1 \rangle = 0$. Thus, we have

$$\langle x, T(y) \rangle = \langle x_1 + x_2, y_1 \rangle$$
$$= \langle x_1, y_1 \rangle + \langle x_2, y_1 \rangle$$
$$= \langle x_1, y_1 \rangle.$$

Therefore, we conclude that $\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T(y) \rangle$ and so $T^*$ exists and that $T^* = T = T^2$.

Conversely, suppose $T^* = T = T^2$. We need to show that $T$ is an orthogonal projection; that is, we need to show $N(T) = R(T)^\perp$ and $N(T)^\perp = R(T)$. First, we will show $R(T) = N(T)^\perp$. Let $x \in R(T)$ and let $y \in N(T)$. Note that $T$ is a projection since $T^2 = T$ and so we have $x = T(x) = T^*(x)$ since We need to show that $\langle x, y \rangle = 0$. Thus, we have

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle T^*(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T(y) \rangle = \langle x, 0 \rangle = 0.$$

Thus, $x \in N(T)^\perp$ and so $R(T) \subseteq N(T)^\perp$. Now, let $y \in N(T)^\perp$. We need to show that $T(y) = y$ so that $y \in R(T)$. Consider the norm $\|y - T(y)\|^2$. It suffices to show that this

norm is zero. Observe that

$$\|y - T(y)\|^2 = \langle y - T(y), y - T(y) \rangle$$
$$= \langle y, y - T(y) \rangle - \langle T(y), y - T(y) \rangle.$$

Observe that $y - T(y) \in N(T)$. So, $y \in N(T)^\perp$ implies $\langle y, y - T(y) \rangle = 0$. With the second term, namely $\langle T(y), y - T(y) \rangle$, we use the fact that $T^2 = T = T^*$ and $y - T(y) \in N(T)$ to write

$$\langle T(y), y - T(y) \rangle = \langle y, T(y - T(y)) \rangle = \langle y, 0 \rangle = 0.$$

So, we have $\|y - T(y)\|^2 = 0$ implies $y - T(y) = 0$. Thus, $T(y) = y$ and so we can conclude that $y \in R(T)$. Therefore, $R(T) = N(T)^\perp$.

Using the preceding results, we write $R(T)^\perp = (N(T)^\perp)^\perp \supseteq N(T)$ using Exercise 13 (b) of Section 6.2. Now, suppose that $x \in R(T)^\perp$. For any $y \in V$, we have

$$\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle = \langle x, T(y) \rangle = 0.$$

Thus, $T(x) = 0$ and so $x \in N(T)$. Hence, $R(T)^\perp = N(T)$. ∎

Let $V$ be a finite-dimensional inner product space, and $W$ is a subspace of $V$, and $T$ is an orthogonal projection of $V$ on $W$. Suppose $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is an orthonormal basis for $V$. We can choose $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ to be the basis for $W$. We find that $[T]_\beta$ is a diagonal matrix with ones as the first $k$ diagonal entries and zeros elsewhere. Thus, $[T]_\beta$ has the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} I_k & O_1 \\ O_2 & O_3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Suppose $U$ is any projection on $W$, then we can choose a basis $\gamma$ for $V$ such that $[U]_\gamma$ has the same form above. But $\gamma$ may not be orthonormal.

**Theorem 6.6.2** (The Spectral Theorem). Suppose that $T$ is a linear operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space $V$ over $F$ with the distinct eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$. Assume that $T$ is normal if $F = \mathbb{C}$ and that $T$ is self-adjoint if $F = \mathbb{R}$. For each $i(1 \le i \le k)$, let $W_i$ be the eigenspace of $T$ corresponding to the eigenvalue $\lambda_i$, and let $T_i$ be the orthogonal projection of $V$ on $W_i$. Then the following statements are true.

(a) $V = W_1 \oplus W_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus W_k$.

(b) If $W_i'$ denotes the direct sum of the subspaces $W_j$ for $j \ne i$, then $W_i^\perp = W_i'$.

(c) $T_i T_j = \delta_{ij} T_i$ for $1 \le i, j \le k$.

(d) $I = T_1 + T_2 + \cdots + T_k$.

(e) $T = \lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k$.

**Proof.** (a) Using Theorems 6.16 and 6.17, we can produce an orthonormal basis for $V$ consisting of eigenvectors of $T$. By Theorem 5.10, we must have

$$V = W_1 \oplus W_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus W_k$$

where each $W_i$ for $1 \le i \le k$ is an eigenspace of $T$.

(b) If $x \in W_i$ and $y \in W_j$ for some $i \ne j$, then $\langle x, y \rangle = 0$ by Theorem 6.15 (d). It follows immediately that $W_i' \subseteq W_i^\perp$ since every $y \in W_j$ is orthogonal to $x \in W_i$ for $i \ne j$.

From part (a), we see that

$$\dim(W_i') = \sum_{j \neq i} \dim(W_j) = \dim(V) - \dim(W_i).$$

By Theorem 6.7 (c), we can see that $\dim(W_i^\perp) = \dim(V) - \dim(W_i)$. Thus, $W_i' = W_i^\perp$, proving (b).

(c) *Left as an exercise*

(d) Since $T_i$ is the orthogonal projection of $V$ on $W_i$, it follows from (b) that

$$N(T_i) = R(T_i)^\perp = W_i^\perp = W_i'.$$

For any $x \in V$, we have $x = x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_k$ by part (a) with $T_i(x) = x_i$. So, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
(T_1 + T_2 + \cdots + T_k)(x) &= T_1(x) + T_2(x) + \cdots + T_k(x) \\
&= x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_k \\
&= I(x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_k).
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have

$$T_1 + T_2 + \cdots + T_k = I.$$

(e) Let $x \in V$ and write $x = x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_k$ by part (a). Since each $x_i$ is an eigenvector of $T$, we have $T(x_i = \lambda_i x_i$. By using the linearity of $T$ and the fact that $T$ is an orthogonal projection of $V$ on $W$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
T(x) &= T(x_1) + T(x_2) + \cdots + T(x_k) \\
&= \lambda_1 x_1 + \lambda_2 x_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k x_k \\
&= \lambda_1 T_1(x) + \lambda_2 T_2(x) + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k(x) \\
&= (\lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k)(x).
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we conclude that

$$T = \lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k.$$

∎

**Definition 6.6.3** (Spectrum of $T$). We call the set $\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k\}$ of eigenvalues of $T$ the **spectrum** of $T$.

**Definition 6.6.4** (Resolution of the Identity). We call the sum $I = T_1 + T_2 + \cdots T_k$ the **resolution of the identity operator** induced by $T$.

**Definition 6.6.5** (Spectral Decomposition). The linear combination

$$T = \lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k$$

is called the **spectral decomposition of $T$**. This linear combination is unique up to the order of its eigenvalues.

**Corollary.** If $F = \mathbb{C}$, then $T$ is normal if and only if $T^* = g(T)$ for some polynomial $g$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $T$ is normal.

$$T = \lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k$$

be the spectral decomposition of $T$. Taking the adjoint of both sides of this spectral decomposition, we must have

$$\begin{aligned}
T^* &= (\lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k)^* \\
&= \overline{\lambda_1} T_1^* + \overline{\lambda_2} T_2^* + \cdots + \overline{\lambda_k} T_k^* \\
&= \overline{\lambda_1} T_1 + \overline{\lambda_2} T_2 + \cdots + \overline{\lambda_k} T_k. && \text{(each } T_i \text{ is self-adjoint)}
\end{aligned}$$

We can use the Lagrange Interpolation Formula to choose a polynomial $g$ such that $g(\lambda_i) = \overline{\lambda_i}$ for $1 \le i \le k$. Then $T^*$ can be written further as

$$\begin{aligned}
T^* &= \overline{\lambda_1} T_1 + \overline{\lambda_2} T_2 + \cdots + \overline{\lambda_k} T_k \\
&= g(\lambda_1) T_1 + g(\lambda_2) T_2 + \cdots + g(\lambda_k) T_k \\
&= g(T).
\end{aligned}$$

Conversely, suppose $T^* = g(T)$. Then observe that $T = (T^*)^* = g(T)^*$. Since each $T_i$ is self-adjoint, we know that each $T_i$ must also be normal. Thus,

$$T^*T = g(T)g(T)^* = g(T)^*g(T) = TT^*$$

and we are done. ∎

**Corollary.** If $F = \mathbb{C}$, then $T$ is unitary if and only if $T$ is normal and $|\lambda| = 1$ for every eigenvalue $\lambda$ of $T$.

**Proof.** For the forwards direction, suppose $T$ is unitary. Thus, $T$ is normal and, by Corollary 2 to Theorem 6.18, $T$ contains eigenvalues of absolute value 1. Conversely, suppose $T$ is normal and $|\lambda| = 1$ for every eigenvalue $\lambda$ of $T$. By part (c) of the Spectral Theorem, we see that

$$\begin{aligned}
T^*T &= (\overline{\lambda_1} T_1^* + \overline{\lambda_2} T_2^* + \cdots + \overline{\lambda_k} T_k^*)(\lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k) \\
&= \overline{\lambda_1} \lambda_1 T_1 + \overline{\lambda_2} \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \overline{\lambda_k} \lambda_k T_k \\
&= |\lambda_1|^2 T_1 + |\lambda_2|^2 T_2 + \cdots + |\lambda_k|^2 T_k \\
&= T_1 + T_2 + \cdots + T_k \\
&= I.
\end{aligned}$$

We can employ the same process to show $TT^* = I$ and we are done. ∎

**Corollary.** If $F = \mathbb{C}$, then $T$ is self-adjoint if and only if $T$ is normal and every eigenvalue of $T$ is real.

**Proof.** Suppose $T$ is self-adjoint. Clearly, we see that $T$ is normal. By lemma, we can see that each eigenvalue of $T$ is real. Conversely, suppose $T$ is normal and every eigenvalue of $T$ is real. Let $T = \lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k$ be the spectral decomposition of $T$. Since every

eigenvalue of $T$ is real, we have $\lambda_i = \overline{\lambda_i}$. Thus, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
T^* &= \overline{\lambda_1} T_1 + \overline{\lambda_2} T_2 + \cdots + \overline{\lambda_k} T_k \\
&= \lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k \\
&= T
\end{aligned}
$$

which shows that $T$ is self-adjoint. ∎

**Corollary.** Let $T$ be as in the spectral theorem with spectral theorem with spectral decomposition $T = \lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k$. Then each $T_j$ is a polynomial in $T$.

**Proof.** Choose a polynomial $g_j (1 \leq j \leq k)$ such that $g_j(\lambda_i) = \delta_{ij}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
g_j(T) &= g_j(\lambda_1) T_1 + g_j(\lambda_2) T_2 + \cdots + g_j(\lambda_k) T_k \\
&= \delta_{1j} T_1 + \delta_{2j} T_2 + \cdots + \delta_{kj} T_k = T_j.
\end{aligned}
$$

∎